Further notes on the taxonomy of the land snail family Clausiliidae Gray, 1855 (Stylommatophora, Helicina) from Myanmar with description of two new species

Nem Sian Man¹, Ngwe Lwin², Chirasak Sutcharit¹, Somsak Panha¹

¹ Animal Systematics Research Unit, Department of Biology, Faculty of Science, Chulalongkorn University, Bangkok, 10330, Thailand ² Fauna and Flora International, No. 35, 3rd Floor, Shan Gone Condo, Maw Nai Gone Market Street, Sanchaung Township, Yangon, Myanmar

Corresponding author: Somsak Panha (somsak.pan@chula.ac.th)

Academic editor: Thierry Backeljau  |  Received 25 November 2022  |  Accepted 2 April 2023  |  Published 3 May 2023

Citation: Man NS, Lwin N, Sutcharit C, Panha S (2023) Further notes on the taxonomy of the land snail family Clausiliidae Gray, 1855 (Stylommatophora, Helicina) from Myanmar with description of two new species. ZooKeys 1160: 1–59. https://doi.org/10.3897/zookeys.1159.98022

Abstract
This study presents a complete species list of the door snails inhabiting Myanmar, updated to now include 33 taxa, and provides taxonomic notes together with a re-description of the shell, radula, and genitalia for 13 species and subspecies, including Oospira philippiana, the type species of the genus Oospira. The snails previously treated as subspecies or synonyms of Oospira gracilior and Oospira magna are reclassified and recognized as distinct species. The lectotype of Oospira insignis has been clarified and an illustration of the original type specimen provided. A long-overlooked species, Oospira andersoniana, has been collected and redescribed herein. Two new species from the limestone karsts in the Salween River Basin are introduced: Oospira luneainopsis Man & Panha, sp. nov. and Oospira zediopsis Man & Panha, sp. nov. A synoptic view of all clausiliid taxa known from Myanmar is presented along with taxonomic information and distributional records. Photographs of the type materials for all taxa are provided for further comparison or, if unavailable, photographs of the examined specimens or the original figure from the literature.

Keywords
Biodiversity, door snail, endemic, gastropod, limestone, systematics
Table of contents

Introduction ............................................................................................................. 2
Materials and methods ............................................................................................. 4
Systematics ............................................................................................................... 8
  Family Clausiliidae Gray, 1855............................................................................. 8
    Subfamily Phaedusinae Wagner, 1922 .............................................................. 8
    Genus Phaedusa Adams & Adams, 1855 .......................................................... 8
      1 Phaedusa shanica (Boettger & Ponsonby, 1888) ........................................ 9
      2 Phaedusa burmanica (Gude, 1914) ............................................................... 11
      3 Phaedusa bocki menglunanensis (Luo, Chen & Zhang, 1998)............... 12
    Genus Oospira Blanford, 1872 ....................................................................... 16
      4 Oospira philippiana (Pfeiffer, 1847) ............................................................ 18
      5 Oospira bulbus (Benson, 1863) ................................................................. 21
      6 Oospira ovata (Blanford, 1872) ................................................................ 22
      7 Oospira stoliczkana (Sykes, 1893) ............................................................. 23
    Oospira species group with long and slender fusiform shell ......................... 28
      8 Oospira gouldiana (Pfeiffer, 1857) ............................................................. 28
      9 Oospira andersoniana (Möllendorff, 1882) ............................................. 31
     10 Oospira magna (Gude, 1914) .................................................................. 33
     11 Oospira shanensis Grego & Szekeres, 2021 .............................................. 34
     12 Oospira luneainopsis Man & Panha, sp. nov. .......................................... 35
     13 Oospira zediopsis Man & Panha, sp. nov. .................................................... 36
Discussion .............................................................................................................. 43
Alphabetical list of additional clausiliid taxa recorded from Myanmar .................... 45
Acknowledgements ................................................................................................. 53
References .............................................................................................................. 54

Introduction

Door snails are well-known land snails belonging to the family Clausiliidae Gray, 1855, and are easily recognized by their usually sinistral fusiform shell and their unique clausilial apparatus: clausilium, plicae and lamellae (Nordsieck 2007; Uit de Weerd and Gittenberger 2013). They are considered to have originated in western Eurasia during the Late Cretaceous before being dispersed worldwide, and now occur in the Ethiopian, Palearctic and Neotropical regions (Nordsieck 2007; Uit de Weerd and Gittenberger 2013). These snails have long fascinated researchers who studied their systematic and evolutionary history, particularly for European taxa (e.g., Giokas et al. 2005; Gittenberger et al. 2012; Koch et al. 2017; Fehér et al. 2018; Hausdorf 2022; Hausdorf and Neiber 2022; Sulikowska-Drozd et al. 2022).

Only two of the seven subfamilies of Clausiliidae have diversified in Southeast Asia: Phaedusinae Wagner, 1922 and Garnieriinae Boettger, 1926 (Uit de Weerd and...
Gittenberger 2013). Their ancestors are believed to have colonized and diversified in SE Asia independently over nearly the same period (Nordsieck 2007; Uit de Weerd and Gittenberger 2013). These door snails are ground to arboreal dwellers (tree trunks) that tend to prefer karstic-associated habitats (Stoliczka 1871; Loosjes 1953). Within Indochina, Vietnam has the highest number of reported clausiliid taxa, with ca. 90 nominal species and subspecies in 33 genera and subgenera (Nordsieck 2011; Schilkeyo 2011; Páll-Gergely and Szekeres 2017; Bui and Szekeres 2019); in contrast, the clausiliids of other countries in Indochina are far less well documented. This is surprising especially in the case of Myanmar, which hosts 14 terrestrial ecoregions (Olson et al. 2001) and has twice the land area of Vietnam, but which has only 31 nominal species and subspecies from four genera (Grego et al. 2021; Szekeres et al. 2021a, b).

Knowledge of Myanmarese door snails was primarily reported during the colonial period in the 19th century by the pioneering western naturalists (see Pholyotha et al. 2020; Man et al. 2022 for further history review). The ‘Fauna of British India including Ceylon and Burma’ by Gude (1914) was the first, and is still the most important, publication on Myanmarese clausiliids. This early-20th century reference includes 19 nominal species and subspecies belonging to ‘Clausilia Draparnaud, 1805’ with various subgenera and ‘sections’ (Gude 1914). Later, three additional species from northern and south-eastern Myanmar were introduced in the mid-20th and early-21st centuries (Likharev 1962; Nordsieck 1973, 2002a). In 2007, Nordsieck published an updated global list and proposed a reclassification of nearly all known clausiliid species. Then, in 2021, he further published the diagnostic characters, drawings and photographs from the type species and representative materials for Asian Phaedusinae (Nordsieck 2007, 2021). Regarding Myanmarese clausiliids, Phaedusa Adams & Adams, 1855 and Oospira Blanford, 1872 stand out as the most species-rich genera in this family. Recently, Grego et al. (2021) and Szekeres et al. (2021a, b) reported that the door snail diversity of Myanmar included 27 nominal species and subspecies of three genera; however, these species are mainly recognized on shell features only.

Traditionally, shell morphology employs apomorphic characters for species recognition, including lamellae development, and the number and position of palatal plicae (i.e., Nordsieck 2007, 2021; Uit de Weerd and Gittenberger 2013). Meanwhile, genital anatomy has been used to distinguish taxa when shell features alone are ambiguous (Pholyotha et al. 2020; Sutcharit et al. 2020a; Páll-Gergely and Szekeres 2020). Yet, the reproductive organs of clausiliids have received less attention, with only some scattered investigations in a few Indochinese species (Stoliczka 1871, 1873; Likharev 1962; Nordsieck 1973; Maassen and Gittenberger 2007; Páll-Gergely and Szekeres 2017). Nevertheless, recent studies on European taxa have shown that the genital organs and their internal sculpture, though highly variable, are helpful for more precise species identification (De Mattia et al. 2020, 2021; Páll-Gergely and Szekeres 2020). Lately, Hwang et al. (2022) also discussed some characters involving the genitalia and shell sculpture that should be considered for further taxonomic work on clausiliids at the species level based on a molecular analysis of the genus Formosana Boettger, 1877. Prior to our recent study, all former studies on Myanmarese phaedusinids were based on shell characters, except for Oospira philippiana (Pfeiffer, 1847), O. decollata.
(Likharev, 1962), and *O. malaisei* Nordsieck, 1973; the genital anatomy of these three species was described, but only the external features were reported. Therefore, there is a need for more in-depth studies of the reproductive organs of these snails and Southeast Asian clausiliids in general. 

Myanmar is actively promoting knowledge of its malacofauna, especially the material obtained under the framework of a joint project between the Forest Department of Myanmar, the Fauna and Flora International (FFI), and the Animal Systematics Research Unit (ASRU) of Chulalongkorn University, Thailand. This effort has already provided information regarding the distribution, habitat, and essential morphological characters (e.g., genitalia and radula) of the Myanmarese malacofauna, including the description of several new ariophantids and helicarionids taxa (Pholyotha et al. 2020, 2022; Sutcharit et al. 2020a; Sutcharit and Panha 2021) and Streptaxidae (Sutcharit et al. 2020b; Man et al. 2022). In this context, the present study provides an up-to-date species list of the door snails from Myanmar, with taxonomic notes, and with a re-description of the shell, genitalia, and radula morphology of several species. In addition, two species from the limestone karsts in the Salween River Basin are described as new. Hopefully, this article will inspire young Myanmarese zoologists to take an interest in the land snails of their country.

**Materials and methods**

**Sampling and morphological studies**

This study was conducted within the MoU (Letter No. 0092) framework between the Forest Department, Ministry of Natural Resources and Environmental Conservation and Forestry, Myanmar and FFI from 2015 to 2016. Specimens were collected throughout northern and southern Myanmar (Fig. 1; Table 1) by the ASRU members and are deposited in the Chulalongkorn University Museum of Zoology (CUMZ), Thailand. Living snails were photographed and euthanized following standard two-step method protocols. The snails were immersed in 5% ethanol and then preserved in 70% (v/v) ethanol for anatomical studies (American Veterinary Medical Association 2020). Species identifications were based on the original descriptions, supplemented with Gude (1914), Nordsieck (2002b, 2007), Grego et al. (2021) and Szekeres et al. (2021a, b). Specimens were also compared with available reference collections and type material.

Shell dimensions (height and width), whorl count, coloration and sculpture were assessed from intact adult shells. The parietal wall of the last whorl of one to three shells was removed to observe the shape, size, thickness and numbers of plicae and lamellae, and clausilium morphology. The terminology used for the clausilial apparatus and genitalia in this description is modified from Gude (1914), Loosjes (1953), and Nordsieck (2007, 2021), as shown in Fig. 2. In addition, when ethanol-preserved specimens were available, the genitalia of one to five snails of each species were dissected and observed under an Olympus SZX2-TR30 stereoscopic light microscope.
The shells, clausilial apparatus and genitalia were then imaged using a digital camera (DSLR D850-Nikon) and a stereo microscope with Cell’s Imaging Software. The buccal masses were removed, and the radulae were soaked in 10% (w/v) NaOH, and then cleaned in distilled water. Radulae were photographed under scanning electron microscopy (SEM; JEOL, JSM-6610 LV).
Table 1. Shell measurements of clausiliid species examined in this study. The numbers listed with collection localities correspond to the map in Fig. 1. Asterisks indicate incomplete (apex broken; not decollated) shells. SH: shell height; SW: shell width.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species no., locality no., and CUMZ no.</th>
<th>Number of specimens</th>
<th>Number of whorls</th>
<th>Ranges, mean ± S.D. in mm</th>
<th>SH/ SW ratio</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Phaedusa shanica</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>11–13½</td>
<td>16.0–18.0 16.88 ± 0.87</td>
<td>5.0–5.5 5.22 ± 0.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Phaedusa burmanica</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12, 13</td>
<td>24.0–25.3 24.76 ± 0.68</td>
<td>4.68–4.9 4.79 ± 0.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Phaedusa bucki menglunanensis</td>
<td>3*</td>
<td>12–13</td>
<td>22.8, 23.9 24.0</td>
<td>4.8–5.3 5.13 ± 0.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Oospira philippiana</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>5–6</td>
<td>21.6–23.0 22.22 ± 0.64</td>
<td>7.0–8.2 7.76 ± 0.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Oospira bulbifera</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>6–6½</td>
<td>21.0–22.6 21.96 ± 0.61</td>
<td>7.2–8.0 7.52 ± 0.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Pha Boang Cave, Mawlamyine Mon</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>6–6½</td>
<td>25.5–26.6 25.95 ± 0.47</td>
<td>7.9–8.2 8.02 ± 0.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Oospira philippiana</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>5–5½</td>
<td>19.39–19.78 19.56 ± 0.17</td>
<td>8.00–8.55 8.30 ± 0.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Oospira ovata</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>5–5½</td>
<td>16.8–18.4 17.60±0.59</td>
<td>6.7–7.1 6.92 ± 0.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Oospira philippiana</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6–6½</td>
<td>21.6–25.2 23.47 ± 0.64</td>
<td>6.7–7.1 6.92 ± 0.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Oospira ovata</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6–6½</td>
<td>24.8–29.0 26.10 ± 1.69</td>
<td>5.7–6.2 5.90 ± 0.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Kaw Ka Thaung, Hpa-an, Kayin</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>11½–12</td>
<td>28.1–29.2 28.50 ± 0.47</td>
<td>5.6–5.9 5.80 ± 0.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Lwin Nga Mountain, Hpa-an, Kayin</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>11½–12</td>
<td>24.0–27.0 26.32 ± 1.41</td>
<td>5.7–6.5 6.11 ± 0.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Sadhdan Cave, Hpa-an, Kayin</td>
<td>2*</td>
<td>11, 11½</td>
<td>25.0, 29.0 25.4 ± 0.62</td>
<td>5.4–6.2 4.63±4.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Taung Lay Cave, Hpa-an, Kayin</td>
<td>4*</td>
<td>8–8½</td>
<td>26.0–27.5 26.42 ±0.72</td>
<td>6.0–7.0 6.52±0.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Waiponla Mountain, Hpa-an, Kayin</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>8–8½</td>
<td>21.83</td>
<td>6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Rathye Pyan Cave, Hpa-an, Kayin</td>
<td>1*</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>18.6–22.0 19.75 ± 1.26</td>
<td>4.1–4.4 4.28 ± 0.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Phra Cave, Tanintharyi (13046, 13047)</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>9–10</td>
<td>21.8–26.3 24.68 ± 1.76</td>
<td>5.3–5.5 5.38 ± 0.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. Oospira andersoniana</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>12½–13</td>
<td>24.5–26.0 25.63 ± 1.00</td>
<td>5.9–6.0 5.93 ± 0.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. Oospira ovata</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>7–8</td>
<td>18.7–21.6 20.34 ± 1.34</td>
<td>5.6–6.0 5.72 ± 0.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. Oospira zediopsis sp. nov.</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>10–11</td>
<td>22.4–26.8 24.98 ± 1.43</td>
<td>5.7–6.8 6.25 ± 0.38</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Two nominal species names described as new to science in this work are attributed to the first and last authors (Man and Panha). Thus, a complete citation of the authorship is “Man and Panha in Man et al.”.

**Anatomical abbreviations**

- **at**: atrium;
- **bb**: bursa (of bursa copulatrix);

---

**Figure 2.** Clausilial apparatus terminology, with *Oospira philippiana* as a representative species. A: apertural, lateral and dorsal views from left to right, respectively, showing the lamellae. B: inside view of last whorl showing principalis and palatal plicae. C: front (left) and back (right) views of clausilium plate. Color indicates each lamella character.
Institutional abbreviations

CUMZ  Chulalongkorn University Museum of Zoology, Bangkok;
JG-C  Jozef Grego collection, Banská Bystrica, Slovakia;
MCZ  Museum of Comparative Zoology, Harvard University, Massachusetts;
MNHN  Muséum National d’Histoire Naturelle, Paris;
NHMUK  The Natural History Museum, London;
SMF  Forschungsinstitut und Naturmuseum Senckenberg, Frankfurt am Main;
SMNH  Swedish Museum of Natural History, Stockholm;
UF  Florida Museum of Natural History, University of Florida, Florida;
ZISP  Zoological Institute, Russian Academy of Sciences, St. Petersburg.

Systematics

Family Clausiliidae Gray, 1855
Subfamily Phaedusinae Wagner, 1922

Genus Phaedusa Adams & Adams, 1855


Type species. Clausilia corticina Pfeiffer, 1842, by subsequent designation of Martens in Albers (1860: 275).

Diagnosis. Shell fusiform, more or less turreted, spire attenuated and shell surface with fine wavy to oblique striations. Palatal plicae short mostly, middle plicae weak to developed and 3 to 7 in number. Superior lamella low, connected to or separated from spiralis, and distinct at transition to spiralis. Inferior lamella spirally ascending and ending close to superior lamella from aperture view. Subcolumellaris visible or invisible in frontal view. Clausilium plate lateral side, rounded and broad.
**External features.** Animal covered with reticulated, dark gray skin; tentacles short; body and tail with paler color on lateral margin of foot; foot moderately elongated, posteriorly obtusely pointed.

**Remarks.** Nordsieck (2002b) compiled all the Southeast Asian Phaedusinae and summarized their diagnostic characteristics. Although *Phaedusa* and *Loosjesia* Nordsieck, 2002 are recognized as having spirally ascending inferior lamella, *Phaedusa* possesses shorter or weaker palatal plicae with the inferior lamella more narrowly spiral; in contrast, *Loosjesia* possesses longer and more developed palatal plicae, and much more spiral inferior lamella. *Phaedusa* closely resembles the Indian *Cylindrophaedusa* Boettger, 1877 (Gittenberger et al. 2019).

In the most recent generic classifications and species accounts by Grego et al. (2021) and Szekeres et al. (2021a, b), the genus *Phaedusa* from Myanmar is comprised of eight species, of which only three species were collected and re-described herein.

1 *Phaedusa shanica* (Boettger & Ponsonby, 1888)
Figs 3A, 4A, B, 5A–D, 6A, 19K; Tables 2, 3

*Clausilia* (*Pseudonenia*) *shanica* Boettger & Ponsonby in Godwin-Austen 1888: 244.
Type locality: “Shan Hills, near Pingoung, Burma, at a height of about 2500 feet” [Pinlaung Township, Shan State, Myanmar].
*Clausilia* (*Phaedusa* (*Pseudonenia*)) *shanica*–Gude 1914: 326, figs 111, 112.
*Phaedusa shanica*–Zilch 1954: 34, pl. 3, fig. 46. Nordsieck 1974: 46, fig. 6, pl. 2, fig. 6.
Grego et al. 2021: 27. Szekeres et al. 2021a: 183–185, fig. 11a, b.

**Material examined.** Limestone hills (Apache Cement Factory), Pyinyaung Village, Meiktila District, Mandalay Region, Myanmar (20°49’39.1”N, 96°23’35.1”E): CUMZ 13032 (6 shells Fig. 4A, B), CUMZ 13033 (40 specimens in ethanol), JG-C2881 (2 shells).

**Description.** Shell fusiform, turreted, translucent, and pale yellowish brown; spire acute. Shell surface with thin and dense oblique striations; suture distinct. Whorls 11–13½, little convex, regularly growing and attenuated to apex, last whorl somewhat compressed. Aperture obliquely rounded to pear-shaped, basis rounded and narrowing towards parietal sinus; peristome slightly protruded, thickened, and expanded. Superior lamella low, continuous with spiralis, and very low at transition to spiralis to almost separated. Inferior lamella spirally ascending, close to superior lamella and ending at peristome. Subcolumellaris emerged and only visible in oblique view. Principalis running along lateral-dorsal side and anterior end visible through oblique apertural view. Palatal plicae lateral, three: first plica strong and longest; second plica very weak and close to first plica; third plica oblique from subcolumellaris and sometimes almost connected to second plica. Palatal plicae not visible without cracking shell. *Clausilium* plate lateral side, broad, rounded and slightly thickened at tip.
Genitalia \((n = 5)\). Atrium (at) short; penis (p) muscular, cylindrical, and gradually narrower towards epiphallus. Epiphallus (ep) muscular, cylindrical, ca. same as penis length and size, and gradually widening to proximal end. Penial retractor muscle (pr) attached proximally to epiphallus. Vas deferens (vd) slender, and shortly bounded at atrium and penis junction (Fig. 5A). Internal sculpture of penis smooth-surfaced and with 3 to 5 longitudinal folds (Fig. 5B); at transition from penis to epiphallus with irregularly corrugated and wrinkled folds that randomly split and merge (Fig. 5C). Internal sculpture of epiphallus with large papillae arranged in oblique rows (Fig. 5D).

Vagina (v) slender at junction of atrium, then bulging at connection of free oviduct (fo) and distal part of pedunculus (dpb), and almost as long as free oviduct. Distal part of pedunculus large, long, and basally stouter; diverticulum (db) slender, nearly equal to dpb length; proximal part of pedunculus (ppb) large, long, measuring ~ 3/4 of diverticulum length, and bursa copulatrix (bb) ovoid (Fig. 5A).

Radula. Each row contains ~ 47 teeth with half-row formula: central—(lateral)—marginal teeth \((1–(11–12)–23)\). Central tooth symmetrically tricuspid; mesocone large with pointed tip; ectocones triangular and located near the base. Lateral teeth asymmetrically bicuspid with small and pointed ectocone located at base; endocone large with pointed tip. Marginal teeth with asymmetrical tricuspsids starting at approximately tooth number 11 or 12; mesocone large with dull tip; endocone and ectocone with small and pointed tips. Marginal teeth gradually reduced in size and becoming multicuspid marginally (Fig. 6A).

Distribution. *Phaedusa shanica* is collected from probably nearby the type locality and likely restricted in Myanmar. It appears to be quite abundant in the limestone hills based on the high numbers collected in our samplings.

Remarks. *Phaedusa shanica* is very similar to *P. theobaldi* (Blanford, 1872) in having two or three palatal plicae which tend to connect at the second and third plicae. *Phaedusa theobaldi* (Fig. 19M) can be distinguished by its less turreted shell, coarser striations, darker horny color, superior lamella and spiralis separated, and not emerged subcolumellaris. These two species are difficult to distinguish at first sight; additional materials from the type locality and the genitalia of *P. theobaldi*, are required to elucidate the relationship between these two species.

Our specimens slightly differ from the type specimen in having three separated palatal plicae, or sometimes second and third plicae well developed and connected (Fig. 4B). According to Nordsieck’s (1974: fig. 6) drawing, the lectotype SMF 62260 has only two almost connected first and second palatal plicae, while the probable paralectotype as stated in Gude (1914: fig. 112) has palatal plicae pattern similar to the specimens examined herein. Therefore, we assume that the distinct or indistinct second plica might be attributed to morphological variation. Shell variations among the examined materials for *P. shanica* were observed, including slender to regular fusiform shell, oblique to subquadrate aperture, and the third plica may be well developed and reach to the second plica (Fig. 4B).

In addition, *Phaedusa lypra* (Mabille, 1887) from Shan State also resembles this species in shell form; however, *P. lypra* has a blunter spire, less turreted shell, and wider
aperture sinus (Szekeres et al. 2021a: fig. 10f). *Phaedusa burmanica* (Gude, 1914) and *P. bocki menglunanensis* (Luo, Cheng & Zhang, 1998) from Shan State differ from *P. shanica* in having a larger shell, five distinct palatal plicae that can be seen from outside of shell, wavier and coarser shell surface, and clausilium with a hook (Fig. 4). Regarding the genitalia, *P. shanica* possesses more simple and smooth longitudinal folds and reticulated papillae in the epiphallus, while *P. burmanica* has strongly wavy, irregularly dense, and crowded longitudinal folds along the epiphallus with a distinct fold near the vas deferens (Fig. 5).

2 *Phaedusa burmanica* (Gude, 1914)
Figs 4C, D, 5E–G, 6B, 18F; Tables 2, 3

*Clausilia [Phaedusa (Euphaedusa)] burmanica* Gude, 1914: 311, fig. 106. Type locality: “Burma, Tonghu” [Taungoo District, Bago Region, Myanmar].


**Material examined.** Myin Ma Hti Cave, Kalaw City, Shan State, Myanmar (20°35'26.1"N, 96°36'42.6"E): CUMZ 13034 (2 shells + 1 incomplete shell; Fig. 4C, D), CUMZ 13035 (1 specimen in ethanol).

**Description.** Shell fusiform, turreted, translucent, and pale chestnut-brown; spire acute. Shell surface glossy with thin and dense striations; suture distinct. Whorls 12–13, little convex, regularly growing and attenuated to apex; last whorl compressed. Aperture vertically subquadrate, basis rounded and narrowing towards parietal sinus; peristome slightly protruded, thickened, and expanded. Superior lamella low, continuous with spiralis, and very low at transition to spiralis. Inferior lamella spirally ascending, close to superior lamella and ending at peristome. Subcilomellaris emerged, and visible in oblique view. Principalis running along lateral-dorsal side and anterior end visible through oblique apertural view. Palatal plicae lateral, distinctly five: first plica strong, longest, and nearly connected to principalis anteriorly; second and fifth plicae almost equal and slightly strong; third and fourth plicae weakest and almost not visible. Palatal plicae visible through translucent shell. Clausilium plate lateral side, broad, rounded and with hook.

**Genitalia** (*n* = 1). Atrium (at) short and slender; penis (p) muscular, cylindrical, broadest at middle part and gradually narrower towards epiphallus. Epiphallus (ep) muscular, cylindrical, ca. same length and size as penis, gradually enlarging to proximal end. Penial retractor muscle (pr) attached proximally to epiphallus. Vas deferens (vd) slender, and shortly bounded at atrium and penis junction (Fig. 5E). Internal sculpture of penis smooth-surfaced and slightly wavy with ca. four longitudinal folds (Fig. 5F). Internal sculpture of epiphallus generally defined as two parts: region near penis with wavy longitudinal folds, then gradually becoming more densely crowded
towards proximal epiphallus; region near vas deferens with strong folds and papillae arranged in oblique rows (Fig. 5G).

Vagina (v) slender at junction of atrium, then bulging at connection of free oviduct (fo) and distal part of pedunculus (dpb), and almost as long as free oviduct. Distal part of pedunculus large, long, basally stouter, and broadest near entrance of diverticulum; diverticulum (db) large, as long as dpb; proximal part of pedunculus (ppb) large, measuring ~ 1/2 diverticulum length, and bursa copulatrix (bb) ovoid (Fig. 5E).

**Radula.** Each row contains ~ 51 teeth with half-row formula: central–(lateral)–marginal teeth (1–(13–14)–25). Central tooth small, symmetrically tricuspid; mesocone large with dull tip; ectocones very small. Lateral teeth asymmetrically bicuspid: endocone large and with dull tip; ectocone very small, pointed tip and located near the base. Marginal teeth tricuspid starting at approximately tooth number 13 or 14; mesocone long and dull tip; endocone very small and located near tip of mesocone; ectocone small with pointed tip. Marginal teeth gradually becoming polycuspid towards radula margin (Fig. 6B).

**Distribution.** Apart from the type locality, this species is widely known from Bhamo, Kachin State (Gude 1914) to Shan State and the Mandalay Region in Myanmar (Grego et al. 2021).

**Remarks.** Phaedusa bocki menglunanensis from Shan State can be distinguished from this species by its inferior lamella less spirally ascending, palatal plicae longer, obliquely arranged and more spaced between them, shell surface finer and more curved striations, aperture vertically quadrate, and subcolumellaris distinctly visible in frontal view. Phaedusa bocki thompsoni Grego & Szekeres, 2021 also differs from this species in having a more vertical aperture, acute spire, and palatal plicae more on dorsal side (see Szekeres et al. 2021a: fig. 9f).

Variation was observed among the examined specimens in having the superior lamella and spiralis either separated or connected.

### 3 Phaedusa bocki menglunanensis (Luo, Chen & Zhang, 1998)
Figs 4E, F, 19E; Table 2

Hemiphaedusa menglunanensis Luo et al., 1998: 34, fig. 2. Type locality: Menglun, Mengla County, Xishuangbanna Prefecture, Yunnan Province, China. Chen and Zhang 1999: 162, pl. 5, fig. 1a, b. Chen et al. 2016: 111, fig. 2–52a.

Phaedusa (Phaedusa) bocki menglunanensis–Nordsieck 2007: 32.


**Material examined.** Aik Kham Cave, Taunggyi City, Shan State, Myanmar (20°49’7.0”N, 97°13’42.0”E): CUMZ 13036 (3 incomplete shells, Fig. 4E, F).

**Description.** Shell fusiform, translucent, and pale yellowish brown; spire regularly acute. Shell surface with fine and coarse striations; suture wide and distinct. Whorls
12 and 13 nearly flattened, regularly increasing, and attenuated to apex. Aperture vertically subquadrate, basis rounded and narrowing towards parietal sinus; peristome protruded, expanded and little reflexed. Superior lamella low, continuous with spiralis, and low at transition to spiralis. Inferior lamella spirally ascending, slightly horizontal before reaching peristome and close to superior lamella. Subcolumellaris emerged, ending at peristome margin, and clearly visible in frontal view. Principalis running along lateral-dorsal side and anterior end visible through oblique apertural view. Palatal plicae lateral, four or five: first plica distinct, longest, and nearly connected to principalis anteriorly; second plica ~ 1/2 of first plica length and remaining plicae oblique, equally spaced, and shorter. Palatal plicae visible through translucent shell. Clausilium plate lateral side, broad, rounded, and with hook.
Figure 4. Shell and clausilial apparatus of A, B *Phaedusa shanica*, specimen CUMZ 13032 from Pyinyaung Village, Mandalay Region A shell B clausilial apparatus C, D *Phaedusa burmanica*, specimen CUMZ 13034 from Myin Ma Hti Cave, Shan State C shell D clausilial apparatus and E, F *Phaedusa bocki menglunanensis*, specimen CUMZ 13036 from Aik Kham Cave, Shan State E shell F clausilial apparatus. White arrows indicate principalis and yellow arrows indicate clausilium hook.

**Distribution.** *Phaedusa bocki menglunanensis* was originally described from Yunnan Province, China, which is near the borders with Vietnam and Laos. It was recently found in Shan State, along the Mekong River near the border with Laos (Szekeres et al. 2021a).
Remarks. No preserved specimens were found for examination of the genitalia. This subspecies and samples of *P. bocki thompsoni* collected from the same geographical range have a similar shell morphology, but *P. bocki thompsoni* has invisible subcolu-
mellaris in frontal view, blunter and turreted spire, and whorls after antepenultimate whorl rapidly attenuated (see Szekeres et al. 2021a: fig. 9f). However, the holotype of \textit{P. bocki thompsoni} from Thailand possesses a subcolumellaris that is visible in frontal view, and four to seven plicae that become shorter and somewhat diffuse towards the base (Szekeres et al. 2021b: fig. 2d). More materials are required for comparison to determine whether the differentiating characters are consistently distinct between these two subspecies.

**Genus \textit{Oospira} Blanford, 1872**


**Type species.** \textit{Clausilia philippiana} Pfeiffer, 1847, by original designation.

**Diagnosis.** Shell short to long fusiform, shell surface smooth to with striated ridges, spire blunt to attenuated, whorls few to numerous (6–13). Palatal plicae short to long, mostly developed and 3–10 in number. Superior lamella developed, usually connected to spiralis, distinct or indistinct at transition to spiralis. Inferior lamella

---

**Figure 6.** Radula morphology A \textit{Phaedusa shanica}, specimen CUMZ 13033 and B \textit{Phaedusa burmanica}, specimen CUMZ 13035. Blue color indicates the central teeth row; yellow color indicates the transition from lateral to marginal teeth. ‘C’ indicates central tooth.
steeply ascending and somewhat ending distant from superior lamella in aperture view. Subcolumellaris usually invisible in frontal view; clausilium plate lateral to ventral side and usually narrow.

**External features.** Living animals possess reticulated skin; dark gray head; short tentacles; body and tail pale to dark brownish; foot moderately elongated, posterior nearly rounded to bluntly pointed.

**Remarks.** *Oospira* is the most species-rich genus of the Phaedusinae, and more than a hundred species have been reported from a broad range in Southeast Asia (MolluscaBase 2022). Nordsieck (2002b) united two previously recognized genera, *Acrophaedusa* Boettger, 1877 and *Pseudonenia* Boettger, 1877 to form *Oospira* based on their shared steeply ascending inferior lamella, normal clausilium plate, and mostly palatal plicae form. Perhaps this grouping causes *Oospira* to become widely diverged in shell shape from ovate to fusiform, dark brown to pink, and different aperture shapes which is thought to be a homoplasy. A phylogenetic analysis of phaedusinids genera from Japanese and some southeast Asian taxa, especially from Vietnam, was not in line with traditional taxonomy probably due to parallel or convergent evolution (Motochin et al. 2017; Mamos et al. 2021). However, none of the Indochinese taxa, including *Oospira*, were explored in this phylogenetic work.

The genera *Loosjesia* from Thailand, *Messageriella* Páll-Gergely & Szekeres, 2017 and *Castanophaedusa* Páll-Gergely & Szekeres, 2017 from Vietnam, *Musaphaedusa* Nordsieck, 2018 from Laos, and *Oospira* have a similar shell morphology, especially in the form of the palatal plicae. However, *Loosjesia* can readily be differentiated by its predominantly curved basal inferior lamella with a long transverse palatal plica and clearly visible subcolumellaris (Loosjes 1953; Nordsieck 2002b). *Messageriella* is distinguished by its marginally ending inferior lamella and subcolumellaris, palatal plicae non-parallel and ventral (Páll-Gergely and Szekeres 2017); similarly, *Castanophaedusa* has a rhomboidal aperture which extends to the columellar side and sharply bent basis, marginal and strongly emerged subcolumellaris, palatal plicae ventral and parallel to the principalis (Páll-Gergely and Szekeres 2017). Meanwhile, *Musaphaedusa* has strong sutural papillae, principalis very long, palatal plicae ventral (only two) and strong rib-like striations on the shell surface (Nordsieck 2018).

Regarding the reproductive anatomy of this group, *Oospira penangensis* (Stoliczka, 1873) and *O. philippiana* were the first species examined for their genitalia (Stoliczka 1871, 1873). At present, seven species (including *O. decollata* and *O. malaisei* from Myanmar) have been investigated (Loosjes 1953; Likharev 1962; Nordsieck 1973; Maassen and Gittenberger 2007; Páll-Gergely and Szekeres 2017).

Based on shell morphology, we have divided *Oospira* from Myanmar into two species groups comprised of those with (i) short and ovate fusiform shells and (ii) long and slender fusiform shells. The short and ovate fusiform group includes the species believed to be *Oospira* s.s. (type species *Clausilia philippiana* Pfeiffer, 1847), while the long and slender fusiform group assumed to be the species previously known as ‘*Pseudonenia* Boettger, 1877’ (type species *Clausilia javana* Pfeiffer, 1841).
**Oospira** species group with short and ovate fusiform shell

In Myanmar, this group is comprised of five species, four of which were collected and examined, while *O. vespa* (Gould, 1856) was not.

### 4 Oospira philippiana (Pfeiffer, 1847)

Figs 2, 3B, 7A–C, 8A–C, 15A, 19H; Tables 2, 3


*Clausilia [Phaedusa (Oospira)] philippiana*—Boettger 1878: 56.


*Oospira philippiana*—Nordsieck 2021: 52, pl. 1, fig. 8. Szekeres et al. 2021a: 175, fig. 8c. Szekeres et al. 2021b: 45.

**Material examined.** Possible syntype SMF 62294/1 ex. H. Dohrn collection from Burma: [Mergui] (Fig. 7A). Saddan Cave, ~600 m south of Kayon Cave, Mawlamyine Township, Mawlamyine District, Mon State, Myanmar (16°31′42.8″N, 97°43′2.1″E): CUMZ 13037 (10 adults + 5 juveniles, Fig. 7C). Kayon Cave [formerly called Farm Caves] ~10 km from Mawlamyine Township, Mawlamyine District, Mon State, Myanmar (16°32′0.5″N, 97°42′53.5″E): CUMZ 13038 (6 shells; Fig. 2), CUMZ 13039 (15 specimens in ethanol). Pha Boang Cave from Mawlamyine Township, Mawlamyine District, Mon State, Myanmar (16°17′14.04″N, 97°54′4.28″E): CUMZ 13040 (9 adults + 9 juveniles, Fig. 7B), CUMZ 13041 (15 specimens in ethanol).

**Description.** Shell ovate-fusiform, opaque, and chestnut-brown color; spire blunt. Shell surface nearly smooth or with very thin striations; suture distinct. Whorls 5–6½, convex, regularly growing and bluntly attenuated to apex. Aperture obliquely pear-shaped, basis broader and narrowing towards parietal sinus; peristome detached, thickened, expanded and little reflexed. Superior lamella developed, continuous with spiralis, and low at transition to spiralis. Inferior lamella steeply ascending, distant from superior lamella and ending at peristome. Subcolumnellaris emerged, and only visible in oblique view. Principalis running along lateral-dorsal side and anterior end visible through oblique apertural view. Palatal plicae lateral, 7–9: first plica strong and longest; following plicae shorter, parallel, nearly equal in length, gradually reduced towards anterior. Clausilium plate lateral side, slightly broad and rounded at tip.
Genitalia (n = 5). Atrium (at) short and slender; penis (p) muscular and cylindrical. Epiphallus (ep) muscular, cylindrical, ca. same length and half of the diameter of penis and broadest at middle part. Penial retractor muscle (pr) attaches proximally to epiphallus. Vas deferens (vd) slender, and shortly bounded at atrium and penis junction (Fig. 8A). Internal sculpture of penis consists of two parts: region near atrium ~ 1/3 of penis length with series of irregular transverse folds, chevron-shaped; region near epiphallus becoming smooth surface and relatively thick with 5–7 longitudinal folds (Fig. 8B). Internal sculpture of epiphallus with elevated papillae arranged in oblique rows (Fig. 8C).

Vagina (v) thick and very short, ~ 1/3 of free oviduct (fo) length. Distal part of pedunculus (dpb) large and long; diverticulum (db) long, ~ 2x length and slightly larger diameter than dpb; proximal part of pedunculus (ppb) slender, ca. equal in length to diverticulum, and bursa copulatrix (bb) with distinct ovate shape (Fig. 8A).
Radula. Each row contains ≥ 39 teeth with half-row formula: central—(lateral)—marginal teeth (1–(11–12)–19+). Central tooth unicuspid with rounded to blunt tip. Lateral teeth bicuspid: endocone large and rounded tip; ectocone very small, pointed tip and located near the base. Marginal teeth asymmetrically tricuspid starting at approximately tooth number 11 or 12: mesocone large and curved to blunt tip; endocone small and located near tip of mesocone; ectocone triangular, pointed tip and located near the base. Outermost teeth have been lost during the preparation process (Fig. 15A).

Distribution. In Myanmar, this species is reported from Kayin, Mon and Tanintharyi (Gude 1914; Szekeres et al. 2021a, b). In addition, the records outside Myanmar are from Kanchanaburi Province, Thailand (Szekeres et al. 2021b), and further in Andaman Islands, but mentioned as dubious record (see Szekeres et al. 2021a: 177). In this survey, three populations were collected from isolated limestone karsts in Salween River Basin with relatively high abundance.

Remarks. Oospira stoliczkana can be distinguished from O. philippiana by its elongate ovoid shell, pale color, and higher numbers of plicae. In terms of the genital organs, the male internal sculpture of O. philippiana has thicker and denser corrugated folds near the atrium than in O. stoliczkana (Fig. 10F). Moreover, O. vespa can be differentiated from this species by having an acute spire, aperture more oblique and broader, whorls more expanded.

Among the examined specimens, those from the Pha Boang Cave population (24 shells) have larger and darker shells with more widely spaced and up to nine developed palatal plicae. In contrast, specimens from the Kayon Cave (21 shells) and Saddan...
Cave (15 shells) populations are uniform in terms of a smaller shell and seven closer and weaker plicae (Table 1).

No specimens were found at the type locality ‘Mergui’ [Myeik]; but Szekeres et al. (2021b) reported material from Tanintharyi Region. Instead, multiple populations with high abundance were collected in the vicinity of Salween River Basin in this present study (Fig. 1; Table 1). This agreed with Stoliczka’s (1871: 175) statement that the species was ‘common at the Farm-caves near Moulmein on limestone hills’.

5 *Oospira bulbus* (Benson, 1863)
Figs 3C, 7D–F, 8D–F, 18E; Tables 2, 3


*Clausilia (Oospira) bulbus*–Blanford 1872: 206, pl. 9, fig. 16. Gude 1914: 332.

*Clausilia [Phaedusa (Oospira)] bulbus*–Boettger 1878: 56.


*Oospira bulbus*–Szekeres et al. 2021a: 168, fig. 5c, d.

**Material examined.** Sanbel Cave, Mawlamyine Township, Mon State, Myanmar (16°22'26.0"N, 97°46'22.6"E): CUMZ 13042 (15 shells; 7D–F), CUMZ 13043 (3 specimens in ethanol), JG-C2882 (1 shell).

**Description.** Shell oblong-ovate, translucent, and brownish; spire rounded and almost flatted to apex. Shell surface with fine and distinct striations; suture wide and distinct. Whorls 5–5½; penultimate whorl rapidly growing and largest; last whorl compressed and narrower. Aperture obliquely pear-shaped, basis rounded and narrowing towards parietal sinus; peristome detached, thickened, slightly expanded, and not reflexed. Superior lamella sharp, oblique, continuous with spiralis, and low at transition to spiralis. Inferior lamella steeply ascending, distant from superior lamella and ending at peristome. Subcolumellaris emerged and invisible in oblique view. Principalis running along lateral-dorsal side and anterior end visible through oblique apertural view. Palatal plicae lateral, five: first plica longest; following four plicae parallel, equal in length and spacing, and slightly reduced towards anterior. Clausilium plate lateral side and narrow.

**Genitalia** (**n** = 2). Atrium (at) short and slender; penis (p) muscular and cylindrical. Epiphallus (ep) muscular, cylindrical, ca. same length and half diameter of penis, and broadest at middle part. Penial retractor muscle (pr) attaches proximally to epiphallus. Vas deferens (vd) slender, and shortly bounded at atrium and penis junction (Fig. 8D). Internal sculpture of penis consists of two parts: region near atrium and ~ 1/2 of penis length with series of irregular transverse folds, chevron-shaped;
region near epiphallus becoming smooth, with 5–7 slightly wavy longitudinal folds (Fig. 8E). Internal sculpture of epiphallus with elevated papillae arranged in oblique rows (Fig. 8F).

Vagina (v) thick and short, ~ 1/2 of free oviduct (fo) length. Distal part of pedunculus (dpb) large and long; diverticulum (db) long, ~ 2x in length and slightly smaller in diameter than dpb; proximal part of pedunculus (ppb) slender, ca. equal in length to diverticulum and bursa copulatrix (bb) with distinct ovate shape (Fig. 8D).

**Distribution.** *Oospira bulbus* has only been reported from Myanmar and is possibly endemic in the limestone hills along the lower course of Attaran River. The specimens examined herein were collected near the type locality.

**Remarks.** *Oospira ovata* can be separated from this species by its a smoother striated shell, attenuated spire and usually seven plicae. In terms of the genital organs, the male internal sculpture of *O. ovata* has longer V-shaped folds in the region near the atrium and rounded papillae in epiphallus than this species. Although *O. bulbus* has a similar shell form to *Atractophaedus pyknosoma* (Gittenberger & Vermeulen, 2001) from Vietnam, *A. pyknosoma* has a narrower spire, visible subcolumellaris in frontal view, peristome reflected with nearly double lip and first palatal plicae shorter than the following plicae (see Gittenberger and Vermeulen 2001: figs 1–10).

**6 Oospira ovata** (Blanford, 1872)

Figs 3D, 9A–C, 10A–D, 15B, 19G; Tables 2, 3


**Material examined.** Pathein Mountain, Mawlamyine Township, Mon State, Myanmar (16°14′7.5″N, 97°56′48.1″E): CUMZ 13044 (25 shells, Fig. 9A–C), CUMZ 13045 (1 specimen in ethanol), JG-C2883 (2 shells).

**Description.** Shell ovate or pupiform, opaque and chestnut-brown; spire blunt. Shell surface nearly smooth or with very thin growth lines; suture distinct. Whorls 5–5½ convex, rapidly growing; penultimate and antepenultimate whorls equally broad and rounded to apex. Aperture obliquely pear-shaped, basis rounded and narrowing towards parietal sinus; peristome detached, thickened, expanded and little reflexed. Superior lamella well developed, continuous with spiralis and low at transition to spiralis. Inferior lamella steeply ascending, distant from superior lamella and ending at
peristome. Subcolumellaris emerged and only visible in oblique view. Principalis running along lateral-dorsal side and anterior end visible through oblique apertural view. Palatal plicae lateral, six or seven: first plica strong and longest; following plicae short, parallel, equal in length and gradually reduced towards anterior. Clausilium plate lateral side and narrow.

**Genitalia** ($n = 1$). Atrium (at) short and slender; penis (p) muscular and cylindrical. Epiphallus (ep) muscular, cylindrical, $- 1.5 \times$ diameter of penis, and broadest close to penis. Penial retractor muscle (pr) attaches proximally to epiphallus. Vas deferens (vd) slender and shortly bounded at atrium and penis junction (Fig. 10A). Internal sculpture of penis consists of two parts: region near atrium, $- 2/3$ of penis length with moderately thick transverse folds arranged in V-shaped rows; region near epiphallus with smooth surface and four or five longitudinal folds (Fig. 10B, C). Internal sculpture of epiphallus with rounded papillae arranged in oblique rows (Fig. 10D).

Vagina (v) thick, short, and almost half of free oviduct (fo) length. Distal part of pedunculus (dpb) large and long; diverticulum (db) large, slightly longer, and larger in diameter than dpb; proximal part of pedunculus (ppb) slender, $- 2/3$ diverticulum length and bursa copulatrix (bb) with distinct ovate shape (Fig. 10A).

**Radula.** Each row contains $- 61$ teeth with half-row formula: central–(lateral)–marginal teeth (1–(12–13)–26). Central tooth unicuspid with dull tip. Lateral teeth bicuspid; endocone large with curved to dull tip; ectocone very tiny to small and pointed tip. Marginal teeth asymmetrically tricuspid starting at approximately tooth number 12 or 13: mesocone large and dull tip; ectocone and endocone small with pointed tips. Outer marginal teeth increasingly asymmetrical and shorter than inner marginal teeth (Fig. 15B).

**Distribution.** At present, *O. ovata* is only known from Myanmar. Many shells were collected in this study; it is likely endemic to the valley of Attaran River.

**Remarks.** *Oospira ovata* and *O. philippiana* are generally similar in shell morphology, but *O. ovata* has a more expanded spire. The male internal sculpture of *O. ovata* has longer V-shaped folds in the region near the atrium and rounded papillae pattern in epiphallus, whereas *O. philippiana* has shorter V-shaped folds and more elevated and pointed papillae in epiphallus.

7 *Oospira stoliczkana* (Sykes, 1893)  
Figs 9D–F, 10E–H, 19L; Tables 2, 3

*Clausilia vespa*–Stoliczka 1872: 209, pl. 9, fig. 15a. (non Gould, 1856)  
*Clausilia vespa*–Pfeiffer 1877: 468 (in part).  
*Oospira stoliczkana*–Szekeres et al. 2021a: 178, 179, fig. 9a.
Figure 7. Shell and clausilial apparatus of A–C *Oospira philippiana* A possible syntype SMF 62294/1 from Burma B clausilial apparatus, specimen CUMZ 13040 from Pha Boang Cave, Mon State C shell, specimen CUMZ 13037 from Saddan Cave, Mon State and D–F *Oospira bulbus*, specimen CUMZ 13042 from Sanbel Cave, Mon State D clausilial apparatus E, F shells. White arrow indicates principalis.

Material examined. Phra Cave, Tanintharyi Region, Myanmar (11°13’46.2”N, 99°10’34.3”E): CUMZ 13046 (4 shells; Fig. 9D–F), CUMZ 13047 (1 specimen in ethanol).
Taxonomy of the land snail family Clausiliidae from Myanmar

Description. Shell elongate ovoidal, glossy, translucent, and horny brown; spire blunt. Shell surface with very thin striations to smooth surface; suture wide and distinct. Whorls 6–6½, convex, regularly growing and bluntly attenuated to apex. Aperture obliquely pear-shaped, basis rounded and narrowing towards parietal sinus; peristome

Figure 8. Genital anatomy of A–C Oospira philippiana, specimen CUMZ 13039 A whole reproductive system B internal sculpture of penis C internal sculpture of epiphallus and D–F Oospira bulbus, specimen CUMZ 13043 D whole reproductive system E internal sculpture of penis F internal sculpture of epiphallus. Yellow arrows indicate approximate transitional position from penis to epiphallus.
detached, thin and little expanded. Superior lamella developed, sharp, continuous with spiralis and low at transition to spiralis. Inferior lamella steeply ascending, distant from superior lamella and ending at peristome. Subcolumellaris emerged and only visible in oblique view. Principalis running along lateral-dorsal side and anterior end visible through oblique apertural view. Palatal plicae lateral, 8–10: first plica strong and longest;

Figure 9. Shell and clausilial apparatus of A–C *Oospira ovata*, specimen CUMZ 13044 from Pathein Mountain, Mon State A, C shells B clausilial apparatus and D–F *Oospira stoliczkana*, specimen CUMZ 13046 from Phra Cave, Tanintharyi Region D clausilial apparatus E, F shells. White arrows indicate principalis.
following four plicae parallel and equal in length, and remaining plicae shorter, closer, gradually reduced towards anterior. Clausilium plate lateral side and slightly broad at tip.

Genitalia \((n = 1)\). Atrium (at) short and slender; penis (p) muscular and cylindrical. Epiphallus (ep) muscular, cylindrical, slightly longer by 1.5× diameter of pen-

**Figure 10.** Genital anatomy of **A–D** Oospira ovata, specimen CUMZ 13045 **A** whole reproductive system **B** internal sculpture of penis **C** transition from penis to epiphallus **D** internal sculpture of epiphallus and **E–H** Oospira stoliczkan, specimen CUMZ 13047 **E** whole reproductive system **F** internal sculpture of penis **G** transition from penis to epiphallus **H** internal sculpture of epiphallus. Yellow arrows indicate approximate transitional position from penis to epiphallus.
nis, and broadest at proximal part. Penial retractor muscle (pr) attaches proximally to epiphallus. Vas deferens (vd) slender, and shortly bounded at atrium and penis junction (Fig. 10E). Internal sculpture of penis consists of two parts: region near atrium, ~1/4 length of penis with irregular transverse fleshy folds arranged in nearly V-shaped rows (Fig. 10F); region near epiphallus becoming smooth with oblique longitudinal folds (Fig. 10G). Internal sculpture of epiphallus with elevated papillae arranged in nearly oblique rows (Fig. 10H).

Vagina (v) large, short, and almost half the length of free oviduct (fo). Distal part of pedunculus (dpb) large and long; diverticulum (db) long, ca. same length as dpb; proximal part of pedunculus (ppb) slender, almost equal in length to diverticulum, and bursa copulatrix (bb) small, ovateshape (Fig. 10E).

**Distribution.** This species is known from Mon State, along with its type locality in Tanintharyi Region; no reports have been made outside Myanmar to date (Szekeres et al. 2021a).

**Remarks.** *Oospira stoliczkana* can be distinguished from all other species with an ovate-fusiform shell (*O. philippiana*, *O. ovata*, *O. bulbus*, and *O. vespa*) by its elongate ovoidal shell, thinner peristome, and 8 to 10 palatal plicae. Although only one ethanol-preserved specimen could be examined, the internal sculpture of the penis and epiphallus of *O. stoliczkana* differs from *O. philippiana*, *O. bulbus*, and *O. ovata* by its very short V-shaped folds in the region near the atrium and more elevated and pointed papillae in epiphallus.

Some of the examined specimens had a thin and translucent shell, with more distinct palatal plicae.

**Oospira species group with long and slender fusiform shell**


**8 Oospira gouldiana** (Pfeiffer, 1857)

Figs 3E, 11, 13A–D, 15C, 18J; Tables 2, 3


*Clausilia (Phaedusa)* gouldiana–Blanford 1872: 203, pl. 9, fig. 10.


**Materials examined.** Bardai Mountain, Hpa-an Township, Hpa-an District, Kayin State, Myanmar (16°59'10.4"N, 97°42'19.8"E): CUMZ 13048 (25 specimens in ethanol, Fig. 11A–C). Kaw Ka Thatung Cave, Hpa-an Township, Hpa-an District, Kayin State, Myanmar (16°49'40.4"N, 97°42'31.0"E): CUMZ 13049 (23 specimens in ethanol, Fig. 11D). Lun Ngā Mountain, Hpa-an Township, Hpa-an District, Kayin State, Myanmar (16°44'53.2"N, 97°47'09.5"E): CUMZ 13050 (18 specimens in ethanol). Sadhdan Cave, Hpa-an Township, Hpa-District, Kayin State, Myanmar (16°44'23.4"N, 97°43'04.2"E): CUMZ 13051 (2 incomplete shells). Taung Lay Cave, Hpa-an Township, Hpa-an District, Kayin State, Myanmar (17°11'40.3"N, 97°37'47.0"E): CUMZ 13052 (30 shells; Fig. 11E). Waiponla Mountain, Hpa-an Township, Hpa-an District, Kayin State, Myanmar (16°56'7.4"N, 97°42'56.8"E): CUMZ 13053 (2 incomplete shells, Fig. 11F), CUMZ 13054 (2 specimens in ethanol, lost apical whorls). Rathye Pyan Cave, Hpa-an Township, Hpa-an District, Kayin State, Myanmar (16°50'6.2"N, 97°34'14.5"E): CUMZ 13055 (1 incomplete shell).

**Description.** Shell fusiform, translucent, brownish to reddish pink, and 3–4 white apical whorls; spire regularly attenuated. Shell surface finely striated to nearly smooth surface; suture impressed and distinct. Whorls 10–12 convex, regularly growing or sometimes rapidly growing after antepenultimate whorl and attenuated to apex. Aperture pear-shaped, basis broader and narrowing towards parietal sinus; peristome slightly protruded, thickened, expanded, and indistinctly doubled. Superior lamella developed, continuous with spiralis and slightly low at transition to spiralis. Inferior lamella steeply ascending, distant from superior lamella and ending at peristome. Subcolumellaris emerged and invisible in oblique view. Principalis running along lateral-dorsal side and anterior end visible through oblique apertural view. Palatal plicae lateral, five or six: first plica strong and longest; following plicae short, more or less parallel; fourth or fifth plica longer than middle plicae. Clausilium plate lateral side and narrow.

**Genitalia** (n = 5). Atrium (at) short and slender; penis (p) long, slender, and shortly narrower at transition to epiphallus. Epiphallus (ep) slender, ca. same length as penis, slightly smaller diameter, and broadest at middle. Penial retractor muscle (pr) attaches proximally to epiphallus. Vas deferens (vd) thin and shortly bounded at penis (Fig. 13A). Internal sculpture of penis with smooth surfaces and five or six thin longitudinal folds (Fig. 13B). Internal sculpture of epiphallus with irregular corrugated pattern (Fig. 13D) and sometimes with distinct irregular transverse fold and papillae arranged in oblique rows.

Vagina (v) thick, cylindrical, and almost half of free oviduct (fo) length. Distal part of pedunculus (dpb) large and middle part broadest; diverticulum (db) slender, very long, ca. same length as distal part and proximal part of pedunculus; proximal part of pedunculus (ppb) slender, nearly same length as (dpb), and bursa copulatrix (bb) ovoid (Fig. 13A).
**Radula.** Each row contains ≥ 39 teeth with half-row formula: central–(lateral)–marginal teeth (1–(11–12)–19). Central tooth tricuspid with large and triangular mesocone, and ectocones very small and pointed tips. Lateral teeth bicuspid: endocone large and triangular; ectocone very small and pointed tip. Marginal teeth asymmetrically tricuspid starting at approximately tooth number 11 or 12: endocone small located near the tip; mesocone large and dull to blunt tip; ectocone with triangular shape, pointed tip and located near the base (Fig. 15C).

**Distribution.** *Oospira gouldiana* is the most abundant species of the genus in Myanmar, occurring mainly in the south-eastern part of the country. This species was abundant at seven limestone outcrops in Kayin State (Fig. 1, Table 1). It was recorded from Bago, Kayin, Mon, and Tanintharyi in Myanmar, and the distribution was later expanded to include parts of Thailand (Gude 1914; Szekeres et al. 2021a, b).

**Remarks.** *Oospira gouldiana* specimens from Taung Lay Cave are quite similar to *O. malaisei* from Kachin State in terms of shell form. But *O. malaisei* (Fig. 17C) shows a more vertical and broader aperture, reflected peristome, closely and rapidly attenuated apical whorls, and inferior lamella more straight ascending at peristome. In contrast, Taung Lay Cave specimens have an oblique and rounded aperture, less reflected peristome, regularly attenuated whitish apical whors and inferior lamella more spirally ending at peristome. Anatomically, *O. malaisei* possesses an epiphallus of ~ 1/2 the penis length, while in *O. gouldiana* epiphallus and penis have almost equal lengths (see Nordsieck 1973: fig. 26).

*Oospira gouldiana* also shares a similar shell morphology with *O. insignis* exhibiting a regularly attenuated spire with whitish apical whorls, palatal plicae five, and a broad pear-shaped aperture. Nevertheless, *O. gouldiana* has a more attenuated spire, more parallel palatal plicae, aperture more vertical, and less glossy than *O. insignis*. In addition, this species can easily be separated from *O. shanensis* by its pale color, shorter and oblique palatal plicae, inferior lamella more spirally and closely ascending from spiralis and superior lamella. *Oospira penangensis* differs from this species by its less ventricose, narrower, and more vertical subquadrate aperture, inferior lamella ending straight at peristome and weaker superior lamella from apertural view.

*Oospira gouldiana* is highly variable in terms of shell color and shape. The typical form was found in the Bardai and Kaw Ka Thaung populations, showing a yellowish to pinkish color with a regular fusiform shape (Fig. 11A, D), while the Taung Lay population have a slenderer shell and the Waiponla population have a more bulging shell (Fig. 11E, F). In addition, the arrangement of palatal plicae shows much variation among the populations. For instance, the Bardai population has irregularly or obliquely arranged plicae (nearly vertical), Kaw Ka Thaung population has parallelly arranged plicae, while the Waiponla and Lun Nga populations have very weak and short parallelly arranged palatal plicae. Furthermore, a very short plica (dot-like) located near the anteriormost palatal plicae next to subcolumellaris is also observed in the Bardai population.

Except for the Sadhdan, Taung Lay, and Rathye Pyan populations, for which genitalia could not be examined, the remaining populations are similar in external
genital morphology, with only slightly differing thickness of the longitudinal folds of the internal sculpture of the penis being observed. However, these four populations inhabit a very small geographical area, hence we attribute this minor difference to morphological variation.

9 *Oospira andersoniana* (Möllendorff, 1882)
Figs 12A, B, 13E–H, 15D, 18B; Tables 2, 3

*Clausilia (Pseudonenia) andersoniana* Möllendorff, 1882: 12, pl. 1, fig. 13. Type locality: “In insula Mergui provincise Tenasserim” [Myeik Islands, Tanintharyi Region, Myanmar].

*Clausilia [Phaedusa (Pseudonenia)] andersoniana*–Gude 1914: 317.

**Material examined.** The type specimens could not be located in the Senckenberg Museum, Frankfurt (K.-O. Nagel and S. Hof, pers. comm., April 2022). Phra Cave, Tanintharyi Region, Myanmar (11°13'46.2"N, 99°10'34.3"E): CUMZ 13056 (9 shells; Fig. 12A, B), CUMZ 13057 (25 specimens in ethanol), JG-C2880 (2 shells).

**Description.** Shell fusiform, translucent, and pale yellowish brown color; spire regularly attenuated. Shell surface glossy and almost smooth surface; suture impressed and distinct. Whorls 9–10, little convex, regularly growing and attenuated to apex. Aperture pear-shaped, and basis broader and narrowing towards parietal sinus; peristome protruded, little thickened and expanded. Superior lamella developed, continuous with spiralis, and indistinct at transition to spiralis. Inferior lamella steeply ascending, distant from superior lamella and ending at peristome. Subcolumellaris emerged and invisible in oblique view. Principalis running along lateral-dorsal side and anterior end visible through oblique apertural view. Palatal plicae lateral, 3–5 (usually 3); all plicae very strong, parallel, equal length, spacing, and one or two small plicae sometimes present in middle and at lowest. Clausilium plate lateral side and narrow.

**Genitalia** (*n* = 5). Atrium (at) short and slender; penis (p) almost cylindrical and shortly narrower at transition to epiphallus. Epiphallus (ep) cylindrical, ca. same length and diameter as penis. Penial retractor muscle (pr) attaches proximally to epiphallus. Vas deferens (vd) thin and shortly bounded at penis (Fig. 13E). Internal sculpture of penis with smooth surfaces and with relatively thickened four or five longitudinal folds (Fig. 13F, G). Internal sculpture of epiphallus with large and scattered papillae arranged obliquely to irregularly spaced rows (Fig. 13H).

Vagina (v) thick, cylindrical, and almost equal to free oviduct (fo) length. Distal part of pedunculus (dpb) large and long; diverticulum (db) thin and ca. same length as dpb; proximal part of pedunculus (ppb) slender, nearly equal in length to diverticulum, and bursa copulatrix (bb) small, ovoid (Fig. 13E).

**Radula.** Each row contains ~ 45 teeth with half-row formula: central–(lateral)–marginal teeth (1–(10–11)–22). Central tooth tricuspid: mesocone triangular with dull cusp; ectocones small and pointed tip. Lateral teeth bicuspid: endocone large and
with dull cusp; ectocone small with tip pointed laterally. Marginal teeth asymmetrically tricuspid starting at approximately tooth number 10 or 11: endocone very tiny; mesocone large, elongate, blunt tip; ectocone small, triangular, pointed tip. Outermost becoming smaller and more asymmetrical than inner teeth (Fig. 15D).

**Distribution.** Currently *O. andersoniana* is only known from Taninthary Region, Myanmar.

**Remarks.** This species was described based on two shells collected by the Scottish zoologist, John Anderson (1833–1900), approximately from southern Myanmar, and an illustration was included in the original publication (Möllendorff 1882; Alcock 1902). Then, it was re-described and suggested to be very similar to *O. gouldiana* by Gude (1914). Despite the type specimen being mentioned in the type catalogue of the Clausiliidae in the Naturmuseum Senckenberg by Zilch (1954), this nominal species seems mysterious and is, therefore, listed as uncertain (taxon inquirendum) in MolluscaBase (2022). The type specimens of this species are presumably lost. However, Möllendorff (1882) provided a very detailed description and illustration of the species. Our newly collected specimens from the Taninthary Region have a thinly striated shell, smooth surface, thin peristome, mostly nine whorls and three palatal plicae, which matches well with the diagnostic characteristics of this species.

In this survey, *Oospira andersoniana* and *O. stoliczkana* were collected from the same locality in the Taninthary Region. These two species are similar in possessing a nearly smooth shell glossy surface, thin peristome, pale yellowish color, and less developed inferior lamella. However, *O. stoliczkana* exhibits a shorter, blunt spire, broader clausilium and several palatal plicae (from 8 to 10).

Compared with the other congeners, *Oospira andersoniana* can be distinguished from *O. insignis*, *O. gouldiana*, and *O. magna* by its less ventricose shell, smoother surface and pale color, peristome and inferior lamella weaker, and palatal plicae longer and more uniformly arranged. In contrast, *O. insignis* possesses oblique palatal plicae, more ventricose and darker colored shell, while *O. gouldiana* has a ventricose shell, spire more attenuated and with whitish apical whorls, inferior lamella more bent, aperture thicker and broader, and palatal plicae closer and more oblique. In addition, *O. magna* can be distinguished from *O. andersoniana* by having a finely and densely striated shell surface, inferior lamella well developed, clausilium in ventral position, and palatal plicae longer and more ventral (nearly horizontal). In terms of the genitalia, *O. andersoniana* has a short male organ, internal penis with large longitudinal folds and epiphallus with a distinct reticulated papillae pattern. In contrast, *O. gouldiana* and *O. magna* possess slender and longer male organs, internal penis with thinner and denser longitudinal folds, and epiphallus with irregularly arranged reticulated papillae patterns. Furthermore, *O. limborgi* Grego & Szekeres, 2021, also described from the Taninthary Region, shares some characteristics with this species in having the same number of palatal plicae, nearly triangular aperture, glossy and pale yellowish color (see Szekeres et al. 2021a: fig. 7c).

Shell variation was observed with respect to a small and short plica between the first and second palatal plicae.
**10 Oospira magna (Gude, 1914)**
Figs 12C, D, 14A–D, 19B; Tables 2, 3

_Clausilia [Phaedusa (Pseudonenia)] gouldiana var. magna_ Gude, 1914: 316, fig. 109.
Type locality: “Moulmain and Phaboo” [Mawlamyine, Mon State and Pabu, Hpa-an, Kayin State, Myanmar].

**Materials examined.** Bayin Nyi Cave, Hpa-an Township, Kayin State, Myanmar (16°58’10.1”N, 97°29’30.6”E): CUMZ 13058 (3 shells + 6 incomplete shells, Fig. 12C, D), CUMZ 13059 (1 specimen in ethanol).

**Description.** Shell fusiform, translucent, yellowish brown and 3–4 white apical whorls; spire regularly attenuated. Shell surface nearly smooth to with thin growth lines; suture deep and distinct. Whorls 10–11, convex, regularly growing and attenuated to apex. Aperture oval-pear-shaped, less oblique, basis broader and narrowing towards parietal sinus; peristome protruded, thickened, and slightly expanded. Superior lamella developed, continuous with spiralis, and indistinct at transition to spiralis. Inferior lamella well developed, steeply ascending, distant from superior lamella and ending at peristome. Subcolumellaris emerged and invisible in oblique view. Principalis running along ventral-lateral side and anterior end visible through oblique apertural view. Palatal plicae ventral-lateral, 4–6 (usually 4): first plica strong and longest; second and third plicae short, parallel, oblique, and equal in length; fourth plica longer and stronger than middle plicae. Clausilium plate ventral side and narrow.

**Genitalia** ($n = 1$). Atrium (at) short and relatively large; penis (p) almost cylindrical and shortly narrower at transition to epiphallus. Epiphallus (ep) slender, ca. same length as penis and smaller diameter. Penial retractor muscle (pr) attaches proximally to epiphallus. Vas deferens (vd) almost same diameter as epiphallus and shortly bounded at penis (Fig. 14A). Internal sculpture of penis with smooth surface and ca. four or five thin longitudinal rows (Fig. 14B), and folds slightly enlarged near epiphallus (Fig. 14C). Internal sculpture of epiphallus with large papillae arranged in oblique rows (Fig. 14D).

Vagina (v) thick, cylindrical, and almost equal in length to free oviduct (fo). Distal part of pedunculus (dpb) cylindrical and long; diverticulum (db) very long, slightly enlarged at basis, then gradually slenderer, ~ 3× times length of dpb; proximal part of pedunculus (ppb) slender, slightly short, ~ 3/4 diverticulum length; bursa copulatrix (bb) large, ovoid (Fig. 14A).

**Distribution.** _Oospira magna_ is only recorded from the southern part of the country to the limestone area of the Salween River Basin in Mon and Kayin States, Myanmar.

**Remarks.** Originally, _Oospira magna_ was proposed as a subspecies of _O. gouldiana_ based on its distinct less ventricose shell and seven palatal plicae (Gude 1914). Later Szekeres et al. (2021b) recognized this as a morphological variation within the variable species, _O. gouldiana_. From our recent field survey, several specimens were collected, and their shell morphology matched well with the diagnostic characters of _O. magna_. Although _O. magna_ is highly similar to _O. gouldiana_ in shell form, it can be distinguished mainly by having a less ventricose shell, almost uniform and ventrally longer
Nem Sian Man et al. / ZooKeys 1160: 1–59 (2023)

palatal plicae, more developed inferior spiral lamella, aperture less oblique, last whorl more compressed, spiralis starting deeply ventral, and clausilium ventrally seated. In genitalia, *O. gouldiana* exhibits a long distal part of pedunculus almost the same length as the proximal part of pedunculus and an internal sculpture of epiphallus with a thin and irregular corrugated pattern. These differences in the shell and genitalia characters are greater than the intraspecific variation and those characters were not observed as a morphological variation among the *O. gouldiana* populations examined; therefore, we have raised *O. magna* to a distinct species. *Oospira zediopsis* sp. nov. differ from *O. magna* by its a more ventricose shell with a smoother surface, apical whorl rapidly attenuated, dark reddish color, clausilium and palatal plicae laterally seated, and inferior lamella straight ascending.

11 *Oospira shanensis* Grego & Szekeres, 2021
Figs 3F, 12E, F, 14E–H, 15E, 19J; Tables 2, 3

*Oospira shanensis* Grego & Szekeres in Szekeres et al. 2021a: 177, 178, fig. 8e, f. Type locality: “Shan” [Shan State, Myanmar].

**Material examined.** Limestone outcrop at Nanthe Cave, Kalaw City, Shan State, Myanmar 20°35′16.6″N, 96°37′57.2″E: CUMZ 13060 (5 shells, Fig. 12E, F), CUMZ 13061 (4 specimens in ethanol).

**Description.** Shell fusiform, opaque, and dark yellowish color; 5–6 apical whorls rapidly attenuated. Shell surface glossy and almost smooth; suture impressed and distinct. Whorls 12½–13, last four whorls regularly growing and then rapidly attenuated to apex. Aperture obliquely or elliptical, basis oblique and broadest and narrowing towards parietal sinus; peristome attached, thickened, and expanded. Superior lamella developed, continuous with spiralis and indistinct at transition to spiralis. Inferior lamella steeply ascending, anterior end weakly visible in apertural view, very distant from superior lamella and ending at peristome. Subcolumellaris emerged and visible in oblique view. Principalis running along ventral-lateral side and anterior end visible through oblique apertural view. Palatal plicae ventral-lateral, five: equally spaced, fourth plica curved most, two middle plicae equally shorter than first and fourth; fifth plica can only be seen when shell is opened. Clausilium plate lateral side, broad, rounded and with hook.

**Genitalia** (*n* = 2). Atrium (at) small and short; penis (p) almost cylindrical and gradually narrower at transition to epiphallus. Epiphallus (ep) cylindrical and ca. same length and diameter as penis. Penial retractor muscle (pr) attaches proximally to epiphallus. Vas deferens (vd) very thin and shortly bounded at penis (Fig. 14E). Internal sculpture of penis with 3 to 4 large corrugated longitudinal folds (Fig. 14G). Internal sculpture of epiphallus with finely reticulated pattern arranged on two or three large longitudinal folds (Fig. 14H).

Vagina (v) very thin and ~ 1/3 of free oviduct (fo) length. Distal part of pedunculus (dpb) long and enlarged, cylindrical; diverticulum (db) long, enlarged at basal
and gradually reduced and becoming slender at terminal, and nearly same length as dpb; proximal part of pedunculus (ppb) short, ~ 3/4 diverticulum length, and bursa copulatrix (bb) small, ovoid (Fig. 14E).

**Radula.** Central and lateral teeth contain ≥ 23 teeth with half-row formula: central–(lateral)–marginal teeth (1–(10–11)+). Central tooth tricuspid: mesocone large and triangular; ectocone small and located near the base. Lateral teeth bicuspid: endocone large and bluntly pointed tip; ectocone small and pointed tip. Marginal teeth asymmetrically tricuspid starting at approximately tooth number 10 or 11 (Fig. 15E). Most marginal teeth part lost during the cleaning process.

**Distribution.** This species is presently only known from Shan State, Myanmar.

**Remarks.** Among all the Myanmar’s *Oospira* species studied herein, this is the only species with a clausilium hook (Fig. 12F), and the clausilium plate is broader than in all other congeners. The presence of the hook in other phaedusinid taxa has been documented and is assumed to provide an advantage in trapping air bubbles to avoid drowning (see Páll-Gergely and Szekeres 2017).

*Oospira sardicola* can be distinguished from *O. shanensis* by having paler glossy yellowish color, wider and less oblique aperture, and less ventricose shell (Szekeres et al. 2021b). This species can clearly be recognized from *O. gouldiana* and *O. magna* by its more ventricose shell, inferior lamella straight ascending and reduced to the peristome and clausilium more rounded, broader, and in lateral position. Moreover, *O. shanensis* has a relatively short male organ, epiphallus larger than the penis, diverticulum narrower to the proximal end, and the internal sculpture is distinctly different from *O. gouldiana* and *O. magna*.

*Oospira mongmitensis*, *O. sardicola*, and *O. shanensis* were recorded from Shan State. All of them are similar in possessing distinct palatal plicae which can be seen through the shell, but different in their pale to dark color, more or less bulging shell and aperture oblique to nearly vertical (Szekeres et al. 2021a, b). Furthermore, *O. sardicola* and *O. mongmitenis* have distinct sutural papillae. These three species; *O. mongmitensis*, *O. sardicola*, and *O. shanensis* from Shan State are notably different from their congeners from southern Myanmar showing anterior end of inferior lamella reduced at peristome.

Our specimens show variation in the development of palatal plicae, especially as the fourth or fifth plicae are horizontal to oblique.

---

**12 Oospira luneainopsis** Man & Panha, sp. nov.
https://zoobank.org/B8866312-31E1-4E9A-993D-6A3E025C8F17  
Figs 16A–C, 18P; Table 2

**Type material.** **Holotype** CUMZ 13062 (Fig. 16A). Measurements: shell height 20 mm, shell width 5.8 mm, and 7 whorls. **Paratypes** CUMZ 13063 (8 shells; Fig. 16B, C), NHMUK 20220504 (2 shells).

**Type locality.** Limestone outcrop at Zwegabin Mountain, Hpa-an Township, Hpa-an District, Kayin State, Myanmar (16°48’44.5”N, 97°40’25.5”E).
**Etymology.** The specific name *luneainopsis* is a compound of ‘lun-eain’, which in the Myanmar language refers to a bobbin used for traditional Myanmar weaving, and the Greek suffix -*opsis* meaning ‘having the appearance of or like’. It refers to the bobbin shape of the shell of this species.

**Diagnosis.** Shell ovate-fusiform, decollated with smooth surface and dense striations near suture. Last whorl neck subquadrate; aperture nearly roundish; peristome detached. Inferior lamella straight ascending and reaching at peristome; palatal plicae four, distinct, equally, and parallelly arranged, and superior lamella developed.

**Description.** Shell ovate-fusiform, decollated, opaque, pinkish brown; spire blunt. Shell surface smooth to with fine growth lines on last whorl, denser near suture and last whorl neck subquadrate; suture impressed and distinct. Whorls 7–8, convex, regularly growing, and bluntly attenuated to apex. Aperture nearly round; peristome detached, thickened, expanded and little reflexed. Superior lamella developed, continuous with spiralis, and slightly low at transition to spiralis. Inferior lamella steeply ascending, distant from superior lamella and ending at peristome. Subcolumellaris emerged and invisible in oblique view. Principalis running along lateral-dorsal side and anterior end visible through oblique apertural view. Palatal plicae lateral, four: first and fourth plicae strong and longest; remaining plicae parallel and equal length; sometimes tiny lowest plica present. Clausilium plate lateral side, narrow and slightly pointed at tip.

**Distribution.** *Oospira luneainopsis* sp. nov. is only known from the type locality.

**Remarks.** No ethanol preserved specimens were available for anatomical study. This species can be distinguished from *O. gouldiana*, *O. magna*, and *O. zediopsis* sp. nov. by its small size, decollated, fewer whorls, roundish aperture, more spiral inferior lamella, and equal palatal plicae. This new species is clearly distinct from *O. decollata* by its spiral inferior lamella visible from aperture, smoother shell, pink color, and more bulging whorls.

Compared to the Vietnamese dextral species, *O. duci* Maassen & Gittenberger, 2007 exhibits thinner and oblique aperture, sinus higher, obviously emerged subcolumellaris, very fine striations and more ventrally unequal palatal plicae than this species.

13 *Oospira zediopsis* Man & Panha, sp. nov.
https://zoobank.org/FB4630CA-1F88-437F-88C8-8187A9ECAA1E
Figs 16D–F, 19Q; Table 2

**Type material.** **Holotype** CUMZ 13064 (Fig. 16E). Measurement: shell height 25 mm, shell width 6.5 mm and 10 whorls. **Paratypes** CUMZ 13065 (50 shells; Fig. 16D, F), NHMUK 20220508 (2 shells) and JG-C 2884 (2 shells).

**Type locality.** Weibyan Cave, Hpa-an Township, Hpa-an District, Kayin State, Myanmar (17°13’38.2”N, 97°37’24.0”E).

**Etymology.** The specific name *zediopsis* is a compound word; ‘zedi’ is one of several terms in the Myanmar language that refer to a stupa or pagoda, and the Greek suffix -*opsis* means ‘having the appearance of or like’. It refers to the Myanmar pagoda-like shell shape of this species.
**Figure 11.** Shell and clausilial apparatus of *Oospira gouldiana* **A–C** specimen CUMZ 13048 from Bardai Mountain, Kayin State **A** typical pinkish shell form **B** clausilial apparatus **C** not fully adult shell **D** yellowish shell form, specimen CUMZ 13049 from Kaw Ka Thaung Cave, Kayin State **E** slender shell form, specimen CUMZ 13052 from Taung Lay Cave, Kayin State **F** ovate shell form, specimen CUMZ 13053 from Waiponla Mountain, Kayin State. White arrow indicates principalis.

**Diagnosis.** Shell fusiform, with four to five white apical whorls, and nearly smooth shell surface. Inferior lamella straight ascending or almost flattened, palatal plicae lateral, equally oblique, superior lamella distinct at transition to spiralis, and clausilium plate lateral side and less bent inwards.
**Figure 12.** Shell and clausilial apparatus of A, B *Oospira andersoniana*, specimen CUMZ 13056 from Phra Cave, Tanintharyi Region A shell B clausilial apparatus C, D *Oospira magna*, specimen CUMZ 13058 from Bayin Nyi Cave, Kayin State C shell D clausilial apparatus and E, F *Oospira shanensis*, specimen CUMZ 13060 from Nanthe Cave, Shan State E shell F clausilial apparatus. White arrows indicate principalis and yellow arrows indicate clausilium hook.

**Description.** Shell fusiform, opaque, and chestnut-brown color; 4–5 apical whorls white and rapidly attenuated. Shell surface smooth to with very thin growth lines; suture impressed and distinct. Whorls 10–11, convex, regularly growing, and attenuated
Figure 13. Genital anatomy of A–D *Oospira gouldiana*, specimen CUMZ 13049 A whole reproductive system B internal sculpture of penis C transition from penis to epiphallus D internal sculpture of epiphallus and E–H *Oospira andersoniana*, specimen CUMZ 13057 E whole reproductive system F overview of internal sculpture of penis and epiphallus G internal sculpture of penis H internal sculpture of epiphallus. Yellow arrows indicate approximate transitional position from penis to epiphallus.

to apex. Aperture obliquely pear-shaped, and basis rounded; peristome slightly protruded, large, relatively thickened and slightly expanded. Superior lamella developed, connected to spiralis and slightly low at transition to spiralis. Inferior lamella steeply
Figure 14. Genital anatomy of A–D *Oospira magna*, specimen CUMZ 13059 A whole reproductive system B internal sculpture of penis near atrium C internal sculpture of penis near epiphallus D internal sculpture of epiphallus and E–H *Oospira shanensis*, specimen CUMZ 13061 E whole reproductive system F overview internal sculpture of penis and epiphallus G internal sculpture of penis H internal sculpture of epiphallus. Yellow arrows indicate approximate transitional position from penis to epiphallus.

ascending, distant from superior lamella and ending at peristome. Subcolumellaris emerged and invisible in oblique view. Principalis running along lateral-dorsal side and anterior end visible through oblique apertural view. Palatal plicae lateral, four or five:
Figure 15. Radula morphology A Oospira philippiana, specimen CUMZ 13039 B Oospira ovata, specimen CUMZ 13044 C Oospira gouldiana, specimen CUMZ 13049 D Oospira andersoniana CUMZ 13057 E Oospira shanensis, specimen CUMZ 13061. Blue color indicates central teeth row; yellow color indicates the transition from lateral to marginal teeth. ‘C’ indicates central tooth.

first and fourth plicae strongest and longest; remaining plicae parallel and equal length; fifth plica smallest. Clausilium plate lateral side and narrow.

Distribution. This species is only known from the type locality with plentiful shells collected.
Figure 16. Shell and clausilial apparatus of A–C *Oospira luneainopsis* sp. nov. A shell of holotype CUMZ 13062 from Zwekabin Mountain, Kayin State B, C paratypes CUMZ 13063 from the type locality B clausilial apparatus C shell and D–F *Oospira zediopsis* sp. nov. D clausilial apparatus of paratype CUMZ 13065 from the type locality E shell of holotype CUMZ 13064 from Weibyan Cave, Kayin State and F shell of paratype CUMZ 13065 from the type locality.

Remarks. No ethanol preserved specimens were available for anatomical study. *Oospira gouldiana* can be distinguished from *O. zediopsis* sp. nov. by its less ventricose shell, denser and stronger striations, more spiral inferior lamella, palatal plicae and clausilium
more ventrally positioned, and principalis not visible from the aperture view. Likewise, 
*O. shanensis* can be differentiated from this new species by wider spacing between spi-
ralis and inferior lamella, anterior end of inferior lamella reduced at peristome, longer 
palatal plicae, attached peristome, and clausilium wider and with a hook. Furthermore, 
*O. zediopsis* sp. nov. can be differentiated from *O. insignis* by its more attenuated spire, 
narrower and more oblique aperture, shorter and more equal palatal plicae.

**Discussion**

Among the 33 clausiliid taxa recorded from Myanmar, 13 species are redescribed here 
based on the shell, genitalia, and radular morphologies, including two new species. The remaining 20 species are known from literature, and images of the type specimens, 
authenticated specimens or original illustrations are provided for further comparison 
(Figs 18, 19). All examined clausiliid genitalia in Myanmar show simple male organs 
(penis, epiphallus, penial retractor muscle, and vas deferens) and these differ mainly in 
the length of penis, diverticulum, and pedunculus. Internally, the epiphallus is more 
variable with two or three patterns on the surface, and different numbers of simple 
longitudinal folds in penis. The genitalia of the recently reported *Phaedusa bhutanen-
sis* Nordsieck, 1974 from Bhutan is similar to the Myanmar *Phaedusa* species exam-
inied in this study in having a distinctly long diverticulum, pedunculus and developed 
male organs (see Gittenberger et al. 2019: figs 27b, 28, 29). Overall, the external shell 
morphology, including shape, size, whorl number, and color is useful in recognizing 
the Myanmar clausiliids at first glance.

In Myanmar, *Oospira* is one the most diverse stylommatophoran genera. It com-
prises 20 species of which ten are redescribed herein, including the type species, *O. phi-
llippiana*. Based on the shell, clausilial apparatus and genital morphology, the genus is 
generally divided into two groups: (1) short and ovate fusiform shell group (including 
type species), and (2) long and slender fusiform shell group. The first group tends to 
have palatal plicae reduced towards the anterior, inferior lamella straight ascending and 
superior lamella distinct from spiralis at its transition point, a well-developed penis, 
diverticulum, and proximal of pedunculus almost similar in length, internal wall of 
epiphallus with equally and obliquely arranged papillae, and internal wall of penis 
consists of two shapes: oblique V-shaped near atrium and transitioning to longitudinal 
folds near epiphallus. The second group possess palatal plicae that are not reduced 
towards the anterior, inferior lamella more spirally ascending (S-shape) and superior 
lamella indistinct from spiralis at it transition point, slender to narrowly cylindrical 
penis, generally diverticulum longer than proximal of pedunculus in length, internal 
wall of epiphallus with irregularly arranged papillae, and internal wall of penis consists 
of longitudinal folds throughout the entire chamber. Additionally, the central tooth 
of group (1) has a more rounded cusp than group (2), which has a triangular shape 
and pointed cusp. These differences in shell and clausilial apparatus between the two 
groups rather agree with the diagnostic characters of the *Pseudonenia* Boettger, 1877
However, further supporting evidence and the morphological and anatomical information of its type species are needed to elucidate and resolve the taxonomy of these groups.

Although the clausiliids seem evenly distributed throughout Myanmar, Phaedusa is distributed in the northeast to southwest, while Oospira occurs widely along the northernmost to the southernmost parts of the country (Fig. 1; Table 1). Based on our surveys, the southern part of Myanmar, including Kayin and Mon States and the Tanintharyi Region, has the largest number of species recorded, and seven species are assumed to be endemic to this area. Allopatric speciation caused by massive and isolated limestone karsts in the topography of the Salween River Basin and the Tenasserim Range possibly plays an important role in the high endemicity of clausiliids. Recent studies on streptaxid and helicarionid snails have shown a similar pattern (Sutcharit et al. 2020a; Man et al. 2022; Pholyotha et al. 2022). However, alternative forces of sympatric speciation and resource partitioning cannot be ignored. For example,
**O. andersoniana** and **O. stoliczkana** in Tanintharyi are sympatric based on this study. The lower abundance of one species compared to the co-occurring species may reflect the high level of competition (Table 1).

Despite the numbers of the Myanmar clausiliids are increasing, the taxonomic placements of some species are still questionable, for example, **Oospira gouldiana** and **O. insignis** which are morphologically highly variable and have overlapping distributions. Previous studies have attempted to reveal their differentiation, but this remains ambiguous (Stoliczka 1872; Gude 1914; Szekeres et al. 2021a, b). This work, therefore, provides baseline information for future studies, especially with respect to the phylogenetic interpretation of the short and ovate shell group that is endemic in Mon State and the long and slender shell group, with its wider distribution from Shan State to Kayin State and the Tanintharyi Region.

### Alphabetical list of additional clausiliid taxa recorded from Myanmar

Below is an alphabetical list of 20 clausiliid species and subspecies belonging to the genera *Cylindrophaedusa*, *Indonenia* Ehrmann, 1927, *Oospira*, and *Phaedusa* that have been reported to occur in Myanmar, but that were not found during this study. The usages of each taxon name are provided in Grego et al. (2021) and Szekeres et al. (2021a, b). The original combination of the taxon name with reference to pages, plates, and/or figures that made the names available is mentioned. The type locality mentioned in the original publication and the distribution record in Myanmar is included. If possible, the modern name and/or regional names of the type locality are provided in square brackets. In addition, the unique name-bearing types (syntype, holotype, and lectotype) are illustrated; only for those that were unavailable or could not be located, the paratypes or paralectotypes or a representative specimen are given. Where necessary, remarks are given on the status of its nominal taxon, type specimens, and other necessary information.

1. **Cylindrophaedusa bacillum** (Hanley & Theobald, 1870)
   
   Fig. 18D

   *Clausilia bacillum* Hanley & Theobald, 1870: 12, pl. 24, fig. 1. Type locality: “Nanclai, Khasi Hills”. Sowerby 1875: *Clausilia* pl. 6, species 48.
   
   *Clausilia (? Medora) bacillum*—Blanford 1872: 200, pl. 9, fig. 3.
   
   
   *Hemiphaedusa bacillum*—Nordsieck 1973: 72, pl. 3, fig. 10.
   
   *Cylindrophaedusa (Montiphaedusa) bacillum*—Szekeres et al. 2021a: 161, 162, fig. 3e.

   **Distribution.** In Myanmar, this species is known from Schegoo (presumably Shwegu), Bhamo City in Kachin State; no further materials have been reported from Myanmar after its mention in Tapparone-Canefri (1889) and Gude (1914).
2 *Oospira arakana* (Stoliczka, 1872)

Fig. 18C

*Clasilia arakana* Stoliczka, 1872: 210, pl. 9, fig. 20. Type locality: “Mai-i in provincia Sandoway” [Mwa-ywa, Thandwe Township, Rakhine State]. Hanley and Theobald 1874: 48, pl. 118. figs 8, 9. Sowerby 1875: *Clasilia* pl. 9, species 78.

*Clasilia* (*Phaedusa*) *arakana*–Gude 1914: 312.

*Oospira arakana*–Nordsieck 1974: 47, fig. 8, pl. 2, fig. 8. Szekeres et al. 2021a: 165, fig. 4d.

**Distribution.** This species is probably endemic to Rakhine State, Myanmar.

3 *Oospira decollata* (Likharev, 1962)

Figs 17A, 18G

*Pseudonenia decollata* Likharev, 1962: 11–13, figs 1, 2. Type locality: “Nat Ma Taung, Chin State, Myanmar”.


**Distribution.** This species was recorded from Nat Ma Taung, also called Victoria Mountain, Chin State, and as such it is the westernmost clausiliid species recorded in Myanmar. Another subspecies, *O. decollata muspratti* Grego & Szekeres, 2021 was recently reported from Naga Hills, India (Szekeres et al. 2021a).

4 *Oospira fusiformis* (Blanford, 1865)

Fig. 18I

*Clasilia fusiformis* Blanford, 1865: 80. Type locality: “Arakan Hill, west of Henzada” [Rakhine State or west of Hinthada Township, Ayeyarwady Region]. Hanley and Theobald 1870: 12, pl. 24, fig. 6. Sowerby 1875: *Clasilia* pl. 7, species 62.

*Clasilia* (*Phaedusa*) *fusiformis*–Gude 1914: 321.

*Oospira fusiformis*–Szekeres et al. 2021a: 169–171, fig. 6b, c.

**Distribution.** In Myanmar, this species is known from Rakhine State and Ayeyarwady Region, and also reported from the Bago Region (Gude 1914). In addition, *O. fusiformis* was recorded from ‘Zwekabin Hill near Mawlamyine’, which the current administration defines as Zwekabin Mountain in Hpa-an District, Kayin State; however, it was noted as dubious by Szekeres et al. (2021a: 171).

**Remarks.** Blanford (1865) described this species based on a single specimen and also noted that the examined specimen was an immature shell because the shell was thin, and the peristome not continuous. Later, Blanford (1872) provided a re-description based on a fully adult specimen received from W. Theobald that had a thickened, expanded, and continuous peristome.
The specimen identified as *Oospira insignis* Szekeres et al. (2021a: 172, fig. 7a) is similar to *O. fusiformis* (Fig. 18I) in terms of shell morphology. Blanford (1872) also knew these similarities and suggested uniting the two species; however, further evidence from the shell and genitalia from topotypic specimens will be necessary to verify their species status.
5 *Oospira gracilior* (Hanley & Theobald, 1870)  
Fig. 18K

*Clausilia insignis* var. *gracilior* Hanley & Theobald, 1870: 12, pl. 24, fig. 3. Type locality: “Burma, Moulmain” [Mawlamyine Township, Mon State, Myanmar].  
*Clausilia (Phaedusa) gracilior* – Gude 1914: 318, 319, fig. 110.

**Distribution.** In Myanmar, this species is known from Mon State.

**Remarks.** Hanley and Theobald (1870) introduced this species as a variety of *O. insignis* but did not provide a description. Later Gude (1914) treated it as a separate species and made a complete re-description. We treat this taxon as a distinct species, following Gude (1914), because it clearly differs from *O. insignis* s.s. in being less ventricose, with blunt spire, and the aperture nearly triangular that is broader at its basis; however, no materials for this species have been recollected since the original description.

6 *Oospira insignis* (Gould, 1843)  
Figs 17B, 18L

*Clausilia (Phaedusa) insignis* – Gude 1914: 319.  
*Oospira insignis* – Nordsieck 2021: 6, pl. 1, fig. 6. Szekeres et al. 2021a: 172, fig. 7a. Szekeres et al. 2021b: 41, fig. 1b.

**Distribution.** In Myanmar, this species is originally known from Dawei, Tanintharyi Region. Subsequent records were from Mon and Kayin states in Myanmar, and the range was further extended to include Tak and Kanchanaburi provinces in Thailand (Gude 1914; Szekeres et al. 2021a, b).

**Remarks.** *Oospira insignis* was the first clausiliid discovered from Myanmar, introduced by A.A. Gould based on specimens from the American missionary and naturalist Francis Mason (1799–1874). In the original description, Gould (1843) did not clearly state the number of examined specimens or the type specimen deposition. Later, Gould (1844) re-described this species with an illustration. When Johnson (1964) catalogued Gould’s type specimen, he clearly designated the lectotype USNM 117120 as the unique name-bearing type. However, Nordsieck (2007: pl. 1, fig. 1) and Nordsieck (2021: pl. 1, fig. 6) illustrated a specimen BM(NH) 1996183 [=NHMUK] from the Cuming collection and used the term ‘lectotype’, but this seems invalid; recently, Szekeres et al. (2021a) designated this specimen as the lectotype. This specimen lot NHMUK 1996183a ex. Cuming collection consisted of three shells with no clear evidence that they originated from Gould’s collection. Although Johnson (1964) catalogued Gould’s type specimens in the Museum of Comparative Zoology, Harvard University, he stated that some unlocated types might presumably be deposited in the NHM, London, because Gould brought some specimens to compare to the Cuming collection. Presum-
ably, Nordsieck (2007) and Szekeres et al. (2021a) may have overlooked the previous lectotype designated by Johnson (1964), which clearly stated that the specimen USNM 117120 ex. Lea collection ex. Gould's collection consists of a single shell as the lectotype. Therefore, the USNM 117120 specimen is the sole name-bearing type of this species. The latter restriction of the lectotype by Nordsieck (2007) and Szekeres et al. (2021a) is invalid (ICZN, 1999: Art. 74.1). Additionally, the specimen NHMUK 1996183 is potentially a part of Gould's type series and is here recognized as the possible paralectotype.

7 *Oospira limborgi* Grego & Szekeres, 2021

*Oospira limborgi* Grego & Szekeres in Szekeres et al. 2021a: 172–174, fig. 7c. Type locality: “Tanintharyi Region, Myanmar”.

**Distribution.** In Myanmar, this species is known only from Tanintharyi Region.

8 *Oospira malaisei* Nordsieck, 1973

Figs 17C, 19C

*Oospira malaisei* Nordsieck, 1973: 81, 82, pl. 3, fig. 3. Type locality: “Punkataung bei Myitkyina (3000 ft), NO-Birma” [near Punkataung, Myintkyina Township, Kachin State, Myanmar]. Szekeres et al. 2021b: 41–43.

**Distribution.** This species was introduced from Kachin State, and no subsequent materials have been recorded from Myanmar. Recently, provisionally classified specimens belonging to this species were reported from Mae Hong Son Province in Thailand (Szekeres et al. 2021b). In addition, it was further reported from Yunnan, China, and included in a molecular analysis (Hwang et al. 2022).

9 *Oospira mongmitensis* Grego & Szekeres, 2021

Fig. 19F

*Oospira mongmitensis* Grego & Szekeres in Szekeres et al. 2021b: 43, fig. 1d. Type locality: “Momeit” [Mongmit, Shan State, Myanmar].

**Distribution.** In Myanmar, this species is only known from Shan State.

10 *Oospira sardicola* Grego & Szekeres, 2021

Fig. 19I

*Oospira sardicola* Grego & Szekeres in Szekeres et al. 2021b: 46, 47, fig. 2c. Type locality: “Ruby Mines, Burmah” [around Mongmit, Shan State, Myanmar].

**Distribution.** In Myanmar, this species is only known from Shan State.
11 *Oospira vespa* (Gould, 1856)
Figs 17D, 19P


*Clausilia* (*Oospira*) *vespa*—Gude 1914: 336, fig. 116.

*Oospira vespa*—Szekeres et al. 2021a: 180, fig. 9c.

**Distribution.** In Myanmar, this species is known from Tanintharyi Region and Salween Valley (Sykes, 1893).

**Remarks.** *Oospira vespa* is the second clausiliid species introduced by Gould (1856). It was described based on a collection by the American naturalist, F. Mason, from Tavoy, British Burma. In the original publication, Gould (1856) provided only a brief description, without the arrangement and morphology of plicae, illustration, or number of examined specimens. Later, Johnson (1964) catalogued Gould’s type specimens and found two specimens, which validly designated a specimen lot MCZ 169455 as the lectotype, which is figured herein (Fig. 17D).

While describing *Oospira stoliczkana* from Myanmar, Sykes (1893) re-described *O. vespa* based on a specimen from ‘Salwin Valley’. Then, it was re-described based on Gould’s original type series (Gude 1914). Between the two species, *O. vespa* can be distinguished from *O. stoliczkana* by having a more acute spire, and only five or six palatal plicae. In contrast, *O. stoliczkana* possesses a blunt spire, and 8 to 10 palatal plicae.

12 *Phaedusa kazueae* Hunyadi & Szekeres, 2021
Fig. 18M

*Phaedusa kazueae* Hunyadi & Szekeres in Grego et al. 2021: 25–27, fig. 5b. Type locality: “Montawa Cave, SW of Taunggyi, Shan State, Myanmar”.

**Distribution.** In Myanmar, this species is only known from Shan State.

13 *Phaedusa lemani* (Gude, 1914)
Fig. 18N

*Clausilia* (*Phaedusa*) *lemani* Gude, 1914: 313, 314, fig. 107. Type locality: “Arakan, Burma” [Rakhine State, Myanmar].

**Distribution.** In Myanmar, this species is only known from Rakhine State and no further materials have been mentioned to date.

14 *Phaedusa lypra* (Mabille, 1887)
Fig. 19A

*Clausilia lypra* Mabille, 1887: 117. Type locality: “Tonkin” [Vietnam].
Phaedusa lypra—Grego et al. 2021: 27, fig. 5c. Szekeres et al. 2021a: 183, fig. 10e, f.

Distribution. In Myanmar, this species is known from Shan State and Mandalay Region (Grego et al. 2021). *Phaedusa lypra* has a wide geographical distribution, ranging from China to Thailand, Vietnam, and India (Szekeres et al. 2021a).

15 Phaedusa theobaldi (Blanford, 1872)
Fig. 19M

*Clausilia (? Medora) theobaldi* Blanford, 1872: 201, pl. 9, fig. 5. Type locality: “T onghu in provincia Barmana” [Taungoo Township, Bago Region, Myanmar].
*Clausilia (Phaedusa) theobaldi*—Gude 1914: 310.
*Phaedusa theobaldi*—Nordsieck 1974: 45, fig. 4, pl. 2, figs 1, 2. Grego et al. 2021: 27, fig. 5d. Szekeres et al. 2021a: 185, fig. 11c–e.

Distribution. In Myanmar, this species was first known from Bago Region. Later, the range was expanded records from Rakhine and Kayah States in Myanmar and from Thailand (Gude 1914; Grego et al. 2021; Szekeres et al. 2021b).

16 Phaedusa bocki thompsoni Grego & Szekeres, 2021
Fig. 19N

*Phaedusa bocki thompsoni* Grego & Szekeres in Szekeres et al. 2021b: 46, fig. 2d. Type locality: “Doi Tung, Chiang Rai Province, Thailand”.

Distribution. In Myanmar, a single specimen was recorded in Shan State (Szekeres et al. 2021a). This subspecies was originally described from northern Thailand with several specimens.

17 Indonenia admirabilis Grego & Szekeres, 2021
Fig. 18A


Distribution. In Myanmar, this species is only known from Kayah State.

18 Indonenia excellens (Nordsieck, 2002)
Fig. 18H

*Tropidauchenia (Indonenia) excellens* Nordsieck, 2002a: 16, fig. 6. Type locality: “Karen Mountains, 1200–1300m” [Kayin or Kayah State, Myanmar].
Indonenia excellens—Nordsieck 2007: 37, pl. 6, fig. 4. Szekeres et al. 2021a: 157, fig. 2b, c.

**Distribution.** In Myanmar, this species is known from Kayin or Kayah States, originally given type locality was uncertain. Recently, it was reported from Shan State (Grego et al. 2021).
19 *Indonenia masoni* (Theobald, 1864)

Fig. 19D

*Clausilia masoni* Theobald, 1864: 246. Type locality: “Tonghu” [Taungoo Township, Bago Region, Myanmar]. Hanley and Theobald 1870: 12, pl. 24, fig. 8. Sowerby 1875: *Clausilia* pl. 8, species 69.

*Clausilia* (? *Nenia*) *masoni*–Blanford 1872: 206, pl. 9, fig. 18.

*Clausilia* (*Garnieria*) *masoni*–Gude 1914: 331.


**Distribution.** In Myanmar, this species is only known from Bago Region.

20 *Indonenia tuba* (Hanley, 1868)

Fig. 19O

*Clausilia tuba* Hanley, 1868: 343. Type locality: “Shan, province” [Shan State, Myanmar]. Hanley and Theobald 1870: 12, pl. 24, fig. 9. Sowerby 1875: *Clausilia* pl. 8, species 72.

*Clausilia* (*Garnieria*) *tuba*–Gude 1914: 331, fig. 115.

*Indonenia tuba*–Szekeres et al. 2021a: 157–159, fig. 2e, f.

**Distribution.** In Myanmar, this species is known from Shan State and the Upper Salween Valley (Hanley 1868).

**Acknowledgements**

The senior author is grateful to all members of the Animal Systematics Research Unit (ASRU), Chulalongkorn University for their kind help during field trips in Myanmar. The authors are indebted to AJ Baldinger (MCZ, Massachusetts), V. Héros and P Maestrati (project ERECOLNAT: ANR-11-INBS-0004, MNHN, Paris); J Ablett, F Naggs, and H Taylor (NHM, London), R Janssen, K-O Nagel, and S Hof (SMF, Frankfurt), A Persson (SMNH, Stockholm), J Slapcinsky (UF, Florida), PV Kijashko (ZISP, St. Petersburg), B. Páll-Gergely (Centre for Agricultural Research, Budapest), and D Mierzwa-Szymkowiak (Museum and Institute of Zoology, Warsaw) for kindly providing the authors with the shell photographs of material housed in the type collections. The work in Thailand was funded by the Thailand Research Fund (TRF-DPG628001), Center of Excellence on Biodiversity (BDC-PG4-163008) and additional support by CU-ASEAN Scholarships and the 90th Anniversary of Chulalongkorn University Fund to NSM. The field trips in Myanmar were partially funded through grants received from FFI and TRF-RTA 5880002. We thank the personnel of the Apache Cement Company for sponsoring our surveys in the Mandalay Region. We also thank the Ministry of Natural Resources and the Environmental Conservation Forest Department for the collection and export permits. We also express our gratitude for the comments from reviewers that improved the manuscript and to DJ Anderson for linguistic polishing.
References

Adams H, Adams A (1855 [1854–1858]) The Genera of Recent Mollusca; Arranged according to their Organization (Vol. 2). van Voorst, London, 661 pp. [Published in parts: Vol. 2: 93–284 (1855)]


Gould AA (1843) Shells not long since announced as having been received from the Rev. Francis Mason, missionary at Tavoy, in British Burmah. Proceedings of the Boston Society of Natural History 1: 139–141.


Theobald W (1864) Notes on the variation of some Indian and Burmese Helicidae, with an attempt at their re-arrangement, together with descriptions of new Burmese Gastropoda. Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal 33: 238–250.


Two new Palaearctic species of Xynobius Foerster (Hymenoptera, Braconidae, Opiinae)

Yunjong Han¹*, Cornelis van Achterberg²*, Heung-Sik Lee³, Hyojoong Kim¹

¹Animal Systematics Laboratory, Department of Biological Science, Kunsan National University, Gunsan, 54150, Republic of Korea ²Naturalis Biodiversity Center, P.O. 9517, 2300 RA Leiden, Netherlands ³Animal and Plant Quarantine Agency, Gimcheon, 39660, Republic of Korea

Corresponding author: Hyojoong Kim (hkim@kunsan.ac.kr)

Academic editor: J. Fernandez-Triana | Received 13 March 2023 | Accepted 14 April 2023 | Published 3 May 2023

Citation: Han Y, van Achterberg C, Lee H-S, Kim H (2023) Two new Palaearctic species of Xynobius Foerster (Hymenoptera, Braconidae, Opiinae). ZooKeys 1160: 61–74. https://doi.org/10.3897/zookeys.1160.103417

Abstract
Two new and very similar species of the genus Xynobius Foerster, 1863 are described and illustrated, X. subparallelus Han & van Achterberg, sp. nov. from Japan (Honshu) and X. setosiscutum van Achterberg, sp. nov. from Norway. Three species are newly reported from Norway: Xynobius aciculatus (Thomson, 1895), X. comatus (Wesmael, 1835), and X. polyzonius (Wesmael, 1835). X. polyzonius (Wesmael, 1835) and X. sapporanus (Fischer, 1963) are new combinations. Identification keys to the Xynobius species known from Norway and Japan are added.

Keywords
Japan, key, new species, Norway, parasitoid, setose mesoscutum

Introduction
Opiinae is a large subfamily of the family Braconidae with approximately 2,000 valid species and 39 genera according to Yu et al. (2016). It is a common group of parasitoid wasps containing mainly mining or fruit-infesting dipterous larvae and has a worldwide distribution. Wharton (e.g. 1987, 1988, 1997) published important updates and
some additions for the existing keys to the genera of Opiinae, but the number of genera remains a matter of discussion because the limits of some genera, especially of *Opius* Wesmael, 1835 and *Eurytenes* Foerster, 1863, are uncertain. We follow Li et al. (2013) and treat the genus *Xynobius* Foerster, 1863 as a valid genus separate from *Opius* Wesmael, 1835, not included within it as was done in the past.

During a visit to Osaka Museum of Natural History the first author discovered a remarkably setose species from Japan (Honshu), and the second author discovered a similar species from south-west Norway among Malaise-trap material. These new taxa are compared, described, and illustrated below.

**Material and method**

The Japanese specimen was collected by using a sweep net. The Norwegian specimens were collected in a Malaise trap and were chemically treated with a mixture of xylene + alcohol 96% and amylacetate (AXA-method; van Achterberg 2009). For identification of the subfamily Opiinae, see van Achterberg (1990, 1993, and 1997); for references to the Opiinae, see Yu et al. (2016).

Morphological terminology follows van Achterberg (1988, 1993), including the abbreviations for the wing venation. Measurements are taken as indicated by van Achterberg (1988); for the length and the width of a body part the maximum length and width is taken, unless otherwise indicated. The length of the mesosoma is measured from the anterior border of the mesoscutum up to the apex of the propodeum and of the first tergite from the posterior border of the adductor up to the medio-posterior margin of the tergite.

Observations, photographic images, and descriptions were made either under a digital stereo microscope (VHX-1000, Keyence) or with a Canon 5Ds 50.6-megapixel camera combined with a Canon MP-E 65 mm f/2.8 1–5× macro lens, Laowa KX-800 macro twin flash, and an electronic WeMacro Z-stepper rail. The photos were stacked with Helicon Focus v. 7 software (HeliconSoft, Kharkiv, Ukraine).

The type specimens are deposited in the Osaka Museum of Natural History (OMNH) at Osaka, Naturalis Biodiversity Center (RMNH) at Leiden and Museum Stavanger (MSC) at Stavanger.

**Systematics**

**Genus *Xynobius* Foerster, 1863**

Figs 1–11

*Xynobius* Foerster, 1863: 235. Type species (by original designation): *Xynobius pallipes* Foerster, 1863 (= *Opius caelatus* Haliday, 1837).

Two new Palaearctic species of *Xynobius* Foerster from Japan and Norway


*Xynobius subparallelus* Han & van Achterberg, sp. nov.

https://zoobank.org/ED84A031-AD98-4616-943A-9895E5BF4AF6

**Type material.** Holotype, ♀ (OMNH), “Japan: Naihara, Totsukawa, Yoshino District, 34°05'49"N, 135°52'20"E, 11.viii.2013, SW [= collected by sweeping], Shunpei Fujie, OMNH”

**Diagnosis.** This species belongs to the *Xynobius comatus* group on account of the evenly and conspicuously setose middle lobe of the mesoscutum and scutellum (Figs 3, 4), but it differs from all other species by the subparallel-sided first tergite (Fig. 5; Figure 1. *Xynobius subparallelus* Han & van Achterberg, sp. nov., holotype, ♀, Japan, habitus, lateral.)
about 1.8× longer than its apical width), short temple (Fig. 8; eyes in dorsal view about 2.1× longer than temple), irregularly and weakly striate second tergite (Fig. 6), and vein m-cu of the fore wing that gradually merges into vein 2-CU1 (Fig. 2, but this character is rather variable in *X. setosiscutum*). In addition, the notauli are largely absent on the mesoscutal disc (Fig. 4, a derived character state in common with *X. setosiscutum* sp. nov. from Norway), and the second tergite is longitudinally striate (Fig. 6).

**Description.** Female; length of body 2.7 mm, of fore wing 2.6 mm and of antenna about 3.4 mm.

**Head.** Antenna with 33 segments (Fig. 10), 1.2× longer than body; margin of antennal sockets strongly protruding, depression between antennal sockets (Fig. 7); length of eye in dorsal view 2.1× longer than temple (Fig. 8); height of head 1.35× longer than height of eye; vertex and frons punctate, setose except for large, smooth interspaces on vertex; no median keel on frons (Fig. 7); width of clypeus twice longer than its maximum height; hypoclypeal depression large (Fig. 7); length of the maxillary palp 1.4× longer than height of head; malar sulcus absent; occipital carina absent dorsally; mandible robust (Fig. 1), symmetric, gradually widened basally.

**Mesosoma.** Length of mesosoma 1.4× longer than its height (Fig. 3); pronope absent but with transverse crenulated groove (Fig. 4); mesopleuron largely smooth, but precoxal sulcus medially impressed and coarsely crenulate (Fig. 3); mesopleural sulcus largely smooth; notauli absent on disc except for a pair of short, deep impressions anteriorly (Fig. 4); mesoscutum and scutellum shiny, punctulate, and densely setose; medio-posterior depression of mesoscutum round and rather small (Fig. 4); scutellar sulcus medium-sized and distinctly crenulate; scutellum flat and only posteriorly narrowly sculptured; propodeum reticulate-rugose, with short medio-longitudinal carina anteriorly but posteriorly largely smooth between carinæ (Figs 5, 9).

**Wings.** Fore wing (Fig. 2): pterostigma narrow elliptical, gradually narrowed apically; vein 1-SR+M sinuate; vein 2-SR distinctly oblique; vein 3-SR 1.7× longer than vein 2-SR; vein SR1 slightly curved; r:3-SR:SR1 = 4:26:46; vein m-cu distinctly antefurcal; second submarginal cell elongated; first subdiscal cell transverse and elongated (Fig. 2). Hind wing: vein m-cu oblique and only pigmented; vein 1r-m 0.5× as long as vein 1-M.

**Legs.** Length of hind femur 5.3× longer than its width (Fig. 11).

**Metasoma.** Length of first tergite 1.8× longer than its apical width, its surface rugose with longitudinal striae and rather flat in lateral view (Fig. 5); dorsopleural distinctly present (Figs 5, 9); second tergite finely and irregularly longitudinally striate medi ally (Fig. 6) and distinctly longer than third tergite; second metastomal suture absent (Fig. 6); following tergites smooth and with few setae posteriorly; length of setose part of ovipositor sheath 0.5× longer than length of first tergite and nearly 0.1× as long as fore wing, slightly protruding beyond apex of metasoma (Fig. 1).

**Colour.** Generally dark brown dorsally (Fig. 1); head, scape, mesopleuron and pronotum, yellowish brown; legs and palpi, pale brownish yellow.

**Distribution.** Japan (Honshu).
Two new Palaearctic species of *Xynobius* Foerster from Japan and Norway

Figures 2–11. *Xynobius subparallelus* Han & van Achterberg, sp. nov., holotype, ♀, Japan 2 wings 3 mesosoma lateral 4 mesosoma dorsal 5 propodeum and 1st metasomal segment dorsal 6 2nd and following metasoma segments dorsal 7 head anterior 8 head dorsal 9 propodeum posterior and 1st metasomal segment basal 10 antenna 11 hind leg lateral. The arrow indicates the dorsophe.
Biology. Unknown.

Etymology. Named after the subparallel-sided first metasomal tergite, “sub” is Latin for “less than” and “parallelus” is Latin for “equidistantly sides”.

Remarks. The new species has a distinct dorsope, symmetric mandible, vein r much shorter than vein 2-SR and a large hypoclypeal depression; therefore, it belongs to the genus Xynobius. Most important is the slender (subparallel-sided) first metasomal tergite, the irregularly and weakly longitudinally striate second tergite, the entirely setose mesoscutum and the reduced notauli (absent on most of mesoscutal disc and only distinct and crenulate anteriorly). In the key by Tobias (1998), this species runs to the subgenus Apodesmia Foerster sensu Tobias and (surprisingly) to O. (Opicus) angusticellularis Tobias, 1998. This species has little to do with the new species because the mesosoma is only slightly longer than high in lateral view, the second and third metasomal tergites are granulate and the antenna has 22–24 segments. The new species runs in Chen and Weng (2005) to Opicus (Apodesmia) isabella Chen & Weng, 2005, but it belongs to the genus Apodesmia Foerster, 1863 because the occipital carina is connected to the hypostomal carina ventrally, the second and third tergites are more or less coriaceous, and the clypeus is only 1.2× wider than long. Actually, the new species is similar to Xynobius wengi van Achterberg & Li, 2013 because of the setose mesoscutum and scutellum and striate second metasomal tergite. However, X. wengi has the crenulate notauli present on the mesoscutal disc (only apical quarter absent; notauli nearly entirely absent on disc in X. subparallelus), vein m-cu of the fore wing postfurcal or subinterstitial (distinctly antefurcal in X. subparallelus), the first metasomal tergite about 1.3× longer than wide apically (about 1.8× in X. subparallelus), and the second tergite regularly and coarsely striate (irregularly and finely striate X. subparallelus).

Xynobius setosiscutum van Achterberg, sp. nov.
https://zoobank.org/4CEA8E68-639C-4AD0-AEFD-041D92A8708C
Figs 12–23


Diagnosis. Antenna with 32–34 segments, flagellum dark brown but apical segments more or less brown; temple medium-sized (Fig. 19; roundly narrowed and eye in dorsal view 2.6× longer than temple); mesoscutum and scutellum evenly and conspicuously setose (Fig. 15); notauli largely absent on mesoscutal disc (a derived character state in common with X. subparallelus sp. nov. from Japan); hind femur comparatively
Two new Palaearctic species of Xynobius Foerster from Japan and Norway

Figure 12. Xynobius setosiscutum van Achterberg, sp. nov., holotype, ♀, Norway, habitus, lateral.

robust (Figs 12, 17; about 4× longer than wide); pterostigma narrow elliptical and gradually narrowed apically (Fig. 13); vein m-cu of fore wing distinctly antefurcal and posteriorly angulate with vein 2-CU1 (Fig. 13); first tergite distinctly widened posteriorly (Fig. 16; 1.2–1.4× longer than its apical width in ♀, about 1.6× longer in ♂); second tergite regularly and costate-like striate (Fig. 16) and third tergite smooth; setose part of ovipositor sheath shorter than first metasomal tergite (Fig. 17) and at most slightly protruding beyond apex of metasoma. The new species is very similar
to *X. subparallelus* sp. nov. from Japan because of the reduction of the notaui and the conspicuous setosity of the mesoscutum and scutellum. However, it differs by having the first tergite distinctly widened posteriorly (subparallel-sided in *X. subparallelus*), distinctly wider temple (comparatively narrow), apex of third and fourth metasomal tergites yellow (blackish or dark brown), second tergite regularly and coarsely striate (finely and irregularly striate) and hind femur less slender, about 4× longer than wide (more robust, about 5× longer than wide).

**Description.** Holotype, ♀, length of body 3.0 mm, of fore wing 3.3 mm.

**Head.** Antenna with 34 segments and 1.2× as long as fore wing; third segment 1.4× longer than fourth segment, length of third, fourth and penultimate segments 4.7×, 3.3×, and 2.5× their width, respectively (Figs 21, 22); width of head 1.8× its median length in dorsal view; no depression behind stemmaticum; vertex flattened and punctulate; OOL: diameter of ocellus: POL = 37:15:22 (Fig. 19); frons largely flattened and setose (Fig. 18); face finely punctate, shiny and with conspicuously long setae (Fig. 18); clypeus convex dorsally, semi-circular, largely smooth (except punctuation because of very long setae) and its ventral margin thick and concave, width of clypeus 2.1× its maximum height and 0.5× minimum width of face; hypoclypeal depression large and deep (Fig. 18); eye in dorsal view 2.6× longer than temple and temple behind eye roundly narrowed (Fig. 19); occipital carina distinct but dorsally finer and medio-dorsally absent (Fig. 19); temple and malar space smooth; length of malar space 0.8× basal width of mandible and 0.2× height of eye; malar suture nearly complete, shallow; mandible slightly twisted apically, both teeth robust, basally symmetric or nearly so, basal half with lamelliform ventral carina (Figs 18, 20); length of maxillary palp 1.3× height of head; labial palp segments elongate.

**Mesosoma.** Length of mesosoma 1.5× its height (Fig. 14); laterally pronotum smooth only anteriorly, medially and posteriorly with few crenulae; dorsal pronope absent, medial area rather short, laterally with narrow groove; propleuron weakly evenly convex, with long setae, shiny and smooth (Fig. 14); mesopleuron smooth except for coarsely crenulate precoxal sulcus medially (Fig. 14); mesosternum densely setose; postpectal carina absent; pleural sulcus smooth or nearly so; mesosternal sulcus narrow and finely crenulate; metapleuron largely smooth dorsally and ventrally rugulose, long setose (Fig. 14); mesoscutum steeply raised above pronotum, densely setose, rather shiny and punctulate; notaui short, only impressed anteriorly and absent on most of mesoscutum, rather deep and largely smooth (Fig. 15); medio-posterior depression of mesoscutum rather deep medially, linear and medium-sized; transverse suture of mesoscutum present; scutellar sulcus deep and broad medially, with four carinae and medially 0.2× as long as scutellum; scutellum largely smooth and setose, punctulate, weakly convex, with narrow subposterior depression (Fig. 15); side of scutellum partly punctate (Fig. 15); propodeum largely vermiculate-rugose but posteriorly largely smooth between carinae, anteriorly with short medio-longitudinal carina (Figs 15, 16).
Two new Palaearctic species of *Xynobius* Foerster from Japan and Norway

Figures 13–23. *Xynobius setosiscutum* van Achterberg, sp. nov., holotype, ♀, Norway 13 wings 14 head and mesosoma lateral 15 mesosoma dorsal 16 propodeum and 1st to 4th metasomal segments dorsal 17 hind leg and metasoma lateral 18 head anterior 19 head dorsal 20 mandible latero-ventral 21 antenna 22 base of antenna 23 apex of antenna.
Wings. Fore wing (Fig. 13): pterostigma elongate-elliptical, 5× as long as its maximum width and gradually merging into vein 1-R1; vein M+CU1 weakly curved and only distal quarter sclerotized; 1-R1 reaching wing apex; r:3-SR:SR1 = 4:45:72; 2-SR:3-SR:r-m = 20:45:16; vein r slightly widened, its length 0.3× width of pterostigma, arising far before middle of pterostigma; 2-SR straight; m-cu distinctly antefurcal, largely unpigmented and slightly curved, angled with 2-CU1; cu-a slightly postfurcal and vertical; 1-CU1 widened; vein 3-CU1 distinctly longer than vein CU1b (Fig. 13). Hind wing: M+CU:1-M:1r-m = 20:21:12; cu-a straight; m-cu present.

Legs. Second to fourth fore tarsal segments hardly longer than wide; hind femur, tibia and basitarsus 4.0×, 9.6×, and 5.3× as long as wide, respectively (Fig. 17); hind femur densely and long setose.

Metasoma. First tergite 1.2× as long as wide apically and slightly widened apically, dorsope rather small, its surface convex medially and largely coarsely striate, dorsal carinae distinct in basal third of tergite (Fig. 16); second tergite regularly costate-like striate and following tergites smooth; second suture absent dorsally, except laterally; setose part of ovipositor sheath 0.04× as long as fore wing (entire sheath 0.06×), 0.3× first tergite, and 0.1× as long as hind tibia; sheath slightly protruding beyond apex of metasoma; hypopygium truncate ventro-apically, membranous medially and about 0.6× as long as first tergite (Fig. 17).

Colour. Black or blackish brown; scape and pedicel largely (but dorsally partly dark brown), mandible, palpi, coxae, trochanters and trochantelli and femora basally ivory or whitish; hind tarsus infuscate; remainder of legs, head except occiput, vertex and frons medially, mesoscutum antero-laterally, scutellum laterally, pronotum partly, mesopleuron antero-dorsally and ventrally, third to fifth tergites apically, sixth and seventh tergites, and metasoma ventrally yellow; scutellum mainly dark reddish brown; pronotum medially and propleuron, pterostigma, and most veins brown; antenna dark brown, ventrobasally yellowish, apically nearly brown; ovipositor sheath dark brown; wing membrane subhyaline (Fig. 13).

Variation. Length of body 2.9–3.1 mm, of fore wing 3.2–3.5 mm (of ♂ 2.9 mm); antennal segments in ♀ 32 (2) and 34 (2) and in ♂ 33 (1); flagellum dark brown or brown; mesoscutum posteriorly entirely black or partly brown and medio-posterior depression droplet-shaped or linear; vein m-cu of fore wing angled with vein 2-CU1 or gradually merging into vein 2-CU1; hind femur 4.0–4.2× longer than wide; first tergite 1.2–1.4× longer than wide apically in ♀ (about 1.6× longer in ♂); length of setose part of ovipositor sheath 0.03–0.04× fore wing (exposed sheath 0.06–0.08×).

Distribution. Southwestern Norway.

Biology. Unknown.

Etymology. Named after the entirely and conspicuously setose mesoscutum; “setosus” is Latin for “bristly”, and “scutum” is Latin for “shield”.

Remarks. This species runs to the subgenus Alloypus Foerster sensu Fischer, and with difficulty to Opis saevulus Fischer, 1958 (mesosoma less than 1.5× longer than high in lateral view) or O. irregularis Wesmael, 1835 (mesosoma 1.5× longer than high in lateral view), in the keys by Fischer (1972). Both of these species have nothing in common with the new species and both belong to the genus Apodesmia Foerster, 1863.
Two new Palaearctic species of *Xynobius* Foerster from Japan and Norway

because the occipital carina is curved and connected to hypostomal carina. Actually, the new species is more related to *X. aciculatus* (Thomson, 1895) because they share the setose middle lobe of the mesoscutum, the striate second tergite, the (at least partly) yellow face and clypeus, and the comparatively robust first tergite in females. The new species has the lateral mesoscutal lobes largely setose medially (glabrous in *X. aciculatus*); vein 3-CU1 of fore wing distinctly longer than vein CU1b (about of equal length); vein r of fore wing widened and shorter (narrow and longer); antenna of ♀ with 32–34 segments (with 28–31 segments); sixth metasomal tergite yellow largely dark brown; second tergite coarsely striate (finely striate); notaui largely absent on mesoscutal disc (notaui complete on disc); and vein m-cu of fore wing antefurcal (postfurcal).

**Key to Norwegian species of the genus *Xynobius* Foerster**

**Notes.** The following species are new for Norway and based on material received from Jarl Birkeland and Alf Tore Mjøs (RMNH). *Xynobius aciculatus* (Thomson): RY, Sokndal, Skittmyr; RI, Hjelmeland; *X. comatus* (Wesmael): RI, Suldal, Skumpanes; *X. polyzonius* (Wesmael): RY, Sokndal, Skittmyr. The new combination is based on the examination of the type series.

1. Temples and face densely punctate; scutellum densely rugose; pronotal side (except dorsally) extensively rugose; hind coxa rather dull and densely sculptured; [antenna with about 50 segments; clypeus strongly protruding forwards] ............................................................. *

2. Temples smooth or nearly so; face at most remotely punctate; scutellum smooth or largely so; pronotal side (except medial and posterior grooves) smooth or nearly so; hind coxa shiny and smooth or sparsely punctulate ....

3. Pterostigma behind vein r subparallel-sided or slightly concave; [= “*Stigmato-
poea* Fischer, 1986”]; [notaui on mesoscutal disc largely absent posteriorly; antenna with 46–57 segments] ............................................................. *

4. Precocxal sulcus smooth or granulate; malar suture (rather) deep; head (except more or less clypeus) blackish or dark brown; propodeum without a distinct median carina anteriorly or weakly developed; [notaui largely absent on disc] ............................................................. *

5. Precocxal sulcus distinctly crenulate(-rugose) submedially; malar suture absent, very short or shallow; head partly or largely brownish yellow; propodeum with a distinct median carina anteriorly or a pentagonal areola medially

4. Antennal segments of ♀ 38–42; area below pterostigma with brownish patch, rarely obsolescent; vein M+CU1 of fore wing largely sclerotized; [fourth antennal segment robust; propleuron crenulate posteriorly] .......................... *

5. Antennal segments of ♀ 26–35; area below pterostigma hyaline; basal half of vein M+CU1 of fore wing unsclerotized; [basal antennal segments comparatively stout and dark brown] .......................... *
Second metasomal tergite completely smooth and notauli largely absent on disc of mesoscutum; pronope large to medium-sized and deep; mandible without ventro-basal carina; second metasomal tergite yellowish or yellowish brown; basal half of vein M+CU1 of fore wing sclerotized; eyes of ♀ nearly touching mandibular condyle because of short malar space..............................

..............................X. polyzonius (Wesmael, 1835) comb. nov.
– Second tergite coarsely striate or notauli at least present on anterior half of mesoscutal disc; pronope small, obsolescent or absent; mandible with a short ventro-basal carina; second tergite blackish or dark brown; basal half of vein M+CU1 of fore wing unsclerotized; eyes of ♀ remain distinctly removed from mandibular condyle because of moderately long malar space..............

6 Antenna of ♀ with 22–24 segments, at most 1.2× longer than body; apex of metasoma of ♀ dark brown; hind femur at least partly very finely and densely sculptured and with long setae dorsally; hind tibia densely erect setose; [middle lobe of mesoscutum evenly setose] .................................................................

..............................................................................X. comatus (Wesmael, 1835)
– Antenna of ♀ with 28–34 segments, 1.3–1.5× longer than body; apex of metasoma of ♀ yellow; hind femur smooth and with medium-sized setae dorsally; hind tibia adpressed setose ............................................................

7 Lateral mesoscutal lobes glabrous medially, only laterally with long setae; notauli completely developed on mesoscutal disc; vein 3-CU1 of fore wing about as long as vein CU1b; antenna of ♀ with 28–31 segments; sixth metasomal tergite largely dark brown; second tergite finely striate; vein m-cu of fore wing postfurcal .................................X. aciculatus (Thomson, 1895)
– Lateral mesoscutal lobes largely setose medially; notauli largely absent on mesoscutal disc; vein 3-CU1 of fore wing distinctly longer than vein CU1b; antenna of ♀ with 32–34 segments; sixth metasomal tergite yellow; second tergite coarsely striate; vein m-cu of fore wing antefurcal ...........................................

.............................................................................X. setosiscutum van Achterberg, sp. nov.

Key to Japanese species of the genus Xynobius Foerster

Notes. The number of included species for Japan is based on the list by Yu et al. (2016); only Xynobius sapporanus (Fischer, 1963) is added as a new combination. Types of X. macrocerus, X. sapporanus and X. subparallelus have been examined.

1 Scutellum coarsely punctate; [pterostigma subparallel-sided; antenna with 50–54 segments]..........................................................X. japanus (Fischer, 1963)
– Scutellum smooth........................................................................2

2 Middle mesoscutal lobe evenly setose............................................3
– Mesoscutal lobes glabrous medially, only along notauli with some long setae .....................................................................4
Two new Palaearctic species of Xynobius Foerster from Japan and Norway

Acknowledgements

We give special thanks to Shunpei Fujie from OMNH for making the Japanese specimen available and to Jarl Birkeland and Alf Tore Mjøs for collecting the Norwegian specimens and making them available. This research was supported by the Korea Environment Industry and Technology Institute (KEITI) through the Exotic Invasive Species Management Program funded by the Korea Ministry of Environment (MOE) (2018002270005). It was also supported by the Basic Science Research Program through the National Research Foundation of Korea (NRF) funded by the Ministry of Education (NRF-2022R1A2C1091308).

References


Two new species of crab spiders from Xiaolong Mountains in Gansu Province, China (Araneae, Thomisidae)

Rui Zhang¹, Feng Zhang¹

¹ Key Laboratory of Zoological Systematics and Application of Hebei Province, Institute of Life Science and Green Development, College of Life Sciences, Hebei University, Baoding, Hebei 071002, China

Corresponding author: Feng Zhang (dudu06042001@163.com)

Academic editor: Shuqiang Li | Received 17 March 2023 | Accepted 5 April 2023 | Published 3 May 2023

Citation: Zhang R, Zhang F (2023) Two new species of crab spiders from Xiaolong Mountains in Gansu Province, China (Araneae, Thomisidae). ZooKeys 1160: 75–87. https://doi.org/10.3897/zookeys.1160.103644

Abstract

Two new species of crab spider are described from the Xiaolong Mountains in Gansu Province, China: *Ebelingia spirala* sp. nov. (♂♀) and *Lysiteles longensis* sp. nov. (♂♀). Detailed morphological characters, a distribution map, photographs, and illustrations of the habitus and copulatory organs are given for each species.

Keywords

*Ebelingia, Lysiteles, new species, taxonomy*

Introduction

As the seventh largest family of spiders worldwide, Thomisidae Sundevall, 1833 currently contains 171 genera and 2710 species from all over the world (WSC 2023). It has undergone regional revisions in Canada (Dondale and Redner 1978), Japan (Ono 2009), and China (Song et al. 1999; Tang et al. 2007, 2008; Tang and Li 2010a, b). Although crab spiders have been revised, species reassigned, and unknown sexes described in recent decades, there are still many species needing in-depth study (Liu et al. 2022).
The genus *Ebelingia* Lehtinen, 2004 and *Lysiteles* Simon, 1895 are mainly distributed in eastern and southern Asia. Currently, only three species of *Ebelingia* are known (WSC 2023): *E. forcipata* Song & Zhu, 1993, *E. hubeiensis* Song & Zhao, 1994, and *E. kumadai* Ono, 1985. All three species are distributed in China. *E. forcipata* and *E. hubeiensis* are endemic to China, mainly distributed in Fujian, Hubei, and Jiangxi provinces. There are no reports of this genus in Gansu Province. There are 63 *Lysiteles* species worldwide. The Chinese *Lysiteles* fauna is extraordinarily rich with 45 species (WSC 2023). More than half of the species are distributed in southern China, such as Yunnan, Guizhou, and Hubei Provinces, and Hainan Island. Only three species were reported in Gansu Province.

To enrich the diversity of *Ebelingia* and *Lysiteles* in Gansu Province, a survey from Xiaolong Mountains was carried out by colleagues of Hebei University. After a careful examination of thomisid materials, two new species, *Ebelingia spirala* sp. nov. and *Lysiteles longensis* sp. nov., were recognized. Illustrations of diagnostic structures and a distribution map are presented.

**Materials and methods**

All specimens are preserved in 95% ethanol. Specimens were examined and measured under a Leica M205A stereomicroscope. Photographs were taken using an Olympus BX51 microscope equipped with a Kuy Nice CCD and were imported into Helicon Focus v. 7 for image stacking. Final figures were retouched using Adobe Photoshop 2020. Eye sizes were measured as the maximum diameter in dorsal view. Leg measurements are shown as total length (femur, patella, tibia, metatarsus, and tarsus). All measurements are given in millimetres. The holotypes of the new species are deposited in the Museum of Hebei University (MHBU), Baoding, China. The paratypes are in the Museum of Baoding University.

Abbreviations used: *AME*, anterior median eyes; *ALE*, anterior lateral eyes; *AME–ALE*, distance between AME and ALE; *AME–AME*, distance between AMEs; *PME*, posterior median eyes; *PME–PLE*, distance between PME and PLE; *PME–PME*, distance between PMEs; *PLE*, posterior lateral eyes.

**Taxonomy**

**Family Thomisidae Sundevall, 1833**

**Genus Ebelingia Lehtinen, 2004**

**Type species.** *Misumenops kumadai* Ono, 1985 from Japan.

**Diagnosis.** See Lehtinen (2004).
**Comments.** This genus includes only three species, all of which are distributed in East Asia. Among them, *E. forcipata* and *E. hubeiensis* are endemic to China and recorded from Fujian, Hubei, and Jiangxi provinces. No species were recorded from Gansu Province.

**Distribution.** China, Japan, Korea, Russia (Far East).

*Ebelingia spirala* sp. nov.
https://zoobank.org/95C67764-CC97-4FE4-87BE-29FC005D40C4
Figs 1–8

**Type material. Holotype: ♂, China: Gansu Province, Maiji district, Liqiao town, Baihua Forest Farm, 34°19.93’N, 106°23.18’E, 1844 m, 23 May 2021, Rui Zhang leg. Paratypes: 1♂, with same data as holotype; 2♀, Niangniangba town, Baiyun village, 34°17.2’N, 105°55.97’E, 1524 m, 31 May 2021, Rui Zhang leg; 1♀, Hui County, Jialing town, Xiaolongshan National Nature Reserve, 33°40.52’N, 106°18.67’E, 1647 m, 7 June 2021, Zhaoyi Li leg.; 1♂, Qingshui County, Shanmen Town, Shanmen Village, 34°41.4’N, 106°21.72’E, 1630 m, 24 June 2022, Zhaoyi Li leg.

**Etymology.** The specific name is derived from the Latin “spira” (meaning “a coil”), referring to the shape of RTA in ventral view, adjective.

**Diagnosis.** Male of this new species resembles those of *E. forcipata* Song & Zhu, 1993 (see Liu et al. 2022: 51, figs 4A–E, 5A–F) and *E. hubeiensis* Song & Zhao, 1994 (see Song and Zhao 1994: 115, fig. 4E, F) in having short embolus, flat tegulum, and a bifurcated RTA, but can be distinguished by the following combination of characters: (1) RTA about half the length of tibia (vs almost as long as tibia); (2) the presence of spiral thread on dorsal branch of RTA (vs smooth RTA). Female of *E. spirala* sp. nov. is similar to that of *E. hubeiensis* in having central concavity on anterior hood but can be distinguished by the L-shaped, long spermathecae (vs same length and width in *E. hubeiensis*).

**Description. Male (holotype).** Habitus as in Figs 1, 2. Total length 2.88. Carapace 1.27 long, 1.21 wide, opisthosoma 1.60 long, 1.22 wide, the whole dorsum of body with dense setae. Carapace chestnut-coloured, medially with yellowish band. Ocular area white. Eye sizes and interdistances: AME 0.06, ALE 0.09, PME 0.05, PLE 0.08, AME–AME 0.14, AME–ALE 0.15, PME–PME 0.20, PME–PLE 0.22, AME–PME 0.15, ALE–PLE 0.16. MOA 0.18 long, front width 0.27, back width 0.50. Sternum slightly longer than wide. Chelicerae, endites, and labium yellow. Femora and patellae of legs I–II and legs III–IV reddish brown, other segments of legs I–II dark brown. Leg measurements: I 5.73 (1.59, 0.62, 1.52, 1.43, 0.57); II 5.63 (1.68, 0.56, 1.32, 1.38, 0.69); III 2.34 (0.74, 0.30, 0.48, 0.49, 0.32); IV 2.52 (0.66, 0.36, 0.54, 0.62, 0.34). Leg spination: I Fe: p2; II Fe: d2; III Fe: d2; Ti: d1; IV: Pa: d1; Ti: d2. Opisthosoma dorsum yellowish, with cardiac pattern, posterier with irregular stripes; venter yellow, with black stripes.
Palp (Figs 5, 6). Tibia with two apophyses, short ventral and bifurcated retrolateral: ventral part blunt and longer than ventral tibial apophysis in retrolateral view, dorsal one with spirals. Ventral tibial apophysis short, with blunt apex. Cymbium

Figures 1–4. *Ebelingia spirala* sp. nov. 1, 2 male habitus (1 dorsal view 2 ventral view) 3, 4 female habitus (3 dorsal 4 ventral). Scale bars: 1 mm.
1.25× longer than wide. Tegulum oval 1.25× longer than wide, tegular ridge at 11 o’clock position. Spermophore wide, encircling almost whole tegulum. Embolus short, originating from ~11 o’clock position and terminating at 1 o’clock position.

**Female.** Habitus as in Figs 3, 4. Total length 4.38. Prosoma 1.53 long, 1.57 wide. Opisthosoma 2.85 long, 2.88 wide. Carapace chestnut-coloured, medially with yellowish band, laterally with black spots. Eye sizes and interdistances: AME 0.06, ALE 0.09, PME 0.05, PLE 0.10, AME–AME 0.19, AME–ALE 0.17, PME–PME 0.29, PME–PLE 0.26, AME–PME 0.20, ALE–PLE 0.17. MOA 0.27 long, front width 0.31, back width 0.39. Chelicerae, sternum, and labium yellow. Endites and legs chestnut-coloured. Venter of leg I and II with numerous reddish-brown spots. Leg

Figures 5, 6. *Ebelingia spirala* sp. nov. 5, 6 left male palp (5 ventral view 6 retrolateral view). £ = embolus; RTA = retrolateral tibial apophysis; SP = spermophore; £ = tegulum; VTA = ventral tibial apophysis. Scale bar: 0.1 mm.
measurements: I 5.58 (1.77, 0.74, 1.30, 1.12, 0.65); II 5.14 (1.24, 0.75, 1.37, 1.09, 0.69); III 2.60 (0.78, 0.43, 0.70, 0.39, 0.30); IV 2.86 (0.89, 0.45, 0.58, 0.53, 0.41).

Leg spination: I Fe: d1, p4; Pa: d2; Ti: v3; Mt: p4, r4; II Fe: d1; Pa: d1; Ti: p2, r3; Mt:

Figures 7, 8. *Ebelingia spirala* sp. nov. 7, 8 epigyne/vulva (7 ventral view 8 dorsal view). AH = anterior hood; CO = copulatory opening; FD = fertilization duct; GA = glandular appendage; S = spermatheca. Scale bar: 0.1 mm.
d3, p5, r5; III Fe: d1; Pa: d1; Ti: d3, v4; IV: Fe: d2; Pa: d2; Ti: d2, v2. Opisthosomal dorsum yellow, with white spots at the sides and brown symmetrical patches in the middle; venter with a few white spots at the sides.

Epigyne (Figs 7, 8). Epigyne almost 2× wider than long, with a deep Ω-shaped anterior hood, about 2× longer than wide. Copulatory openings (Fig. 7) located at posterolateral part of anterior hood. Spermathecae L-shaped, separated by more than width of anterior hood. Fertilization ducts short.

**Distribution.** Known only from the type locality in Gansu Province, China (Fig. 17).

**Genus Lysiteles Simon, 1895**

**Type species.** *Lysiteles catulus* Simon, 1895 from Tamil Nadu, India.

**Diagnosis.** See Tang et al. (2007) and Tang and Li (2010a, b).

**Comments.** This genus includes 63 species mainly distributed in eastern Asia. It has never been revised in full, although new species have been described now and then in various papers. Most of the 44 *Lysiteles* species have been recorded from China, and three species have been recorded from Gansu Province.

**Distribution.** Bhutan, China, India, Japan, Korea, Nepal, Pakistan, Philippines, Russia, Vietnam.

*Lysiteles longensis* sp. nov.
https://zoobank.org/873582B1-1E1F-48AC-91F7-76FE3C658BE6
Figs 9–16

**Type material.** **Holotype:** ♂, CHINA: Gansu Province, Qingshui County, Shanmen town, Shanmen village, 34°40.72′N, 106°23.98′E, 1735 m, 22 May 2021, Rui Zhang leg. **Paratypes:** 2♂ 6♀, with same data as holotype; 2♂ 9♀, Dangchuan town, 34°19.73′N, 105°15.77′E, 1711 m, 24 May 2021, Zhaoyi Li leg.; 1♂ 3♀, Qingshui County, Shanmen town, Shanmen village, 34°42.32′N, 106°25.1′E, 1635 m, 3 August 2021, Rui Zhang leg.; 3♂ 6♀, Qingshui County, Shanmen town, Daji village, 34°37.45′N, 106°20.25′E, 1784 m, 23 June 2022, Xinyuan Bai leg.

**Etymology.** The specific name refers to the type locality. “Long” is a short name for Gansu, adjective.

**Diagnosis.** Male *L. longensis* sp. nov. is similar to that of *L. silvanus* Ono, 1980 (see Ono 1980: 212, figs 28–30) in having a long RTA and twisted embolus, but it differs by the following combination of characters: (1) tegulum large and reniform, ca 3/4 of cymbium cavity (vs small, semicircular, and ca 1/2 of cymbium cavity); (2) the lowest point of embolus above the tegulum (vs the lowest point at 1/2 of the tegulum); (3) RTA straight, pointing dorsally (vs RTA flexed, pointing ventrally). Female is similar to that of *L. silvanus* (see Ono 1980: 212, figs 25–27) in having a broad atrium with a sclerotized, transversally extending plate and widely separated copulatory openings,
Figures 9–12. *Lysiteles longensis* sp. nov. 9, 10 male habitus (9 dorsal view 10 ventral view) 11, 12 female habitus (11 dorsal view 12 ventral view). Scale bars: 1 mm.
but it can be easily distinguished by the short, thick, and spherical copulatory duct (vs slender and strongly twisted).

**Description. Male (holotype).** Habitus as in Figs 9, 10. Total length 2.89. Carapace 1.31 long, 1.19 wide. Opisthosoma 1.58 long, 1.19 wide. Carapace reddish brown. Eye sizes and interdistances: AME 0.06, ALE 0.11, PME 0.04, PLE 0.08, AME–AME 0.14, AME–ALE 0.13, PME–PME 0.25, PME–PLE 0.24, AME–PME 0.25, ALE–PLE 0.23. MOA 0.24 long, front width 0.26, back width 0.33. Chelicerae, labium and maxillae blackish brown. Legs yellowish and spinous. Leg measurements: I 4.83 (1.37, 0.46, 1.18, 1.06, 0.76); II 5.06 (1.41, 0.55, 1.28, 1.04, 0.78); III 2.88 (0.86, 0.40, 0.79, 0.45, 0.38); IV 2.93 (0.84, 0.39, 0.82, 0.49, 0.39). Leg spination: I Fe: d3, p3; Ti: d3, p1, r1, v4; Mt: p3, r3, v1; II Fe: d3, p2; Pa: d2, p1, r1; Ti: d1, p3, r2, v3; Mt: p3, r3, v4; III Fe: d3; Pa: d1, r1; Ti: d1, p2, r1; Mt: p2, r1; IV: Fe: d4; Pa: d1, r1; Ti: d2, p2, r2; Mt: p1, r1. Opisthosoma dorsum blackish brown, anterior with longitudinal reddish-brown stripe, posterior part with 3 transverse, reddish-brown stripes.

**Figures 13, 14.** *Lysiteles longensis* sp. nov., left male palp (13 ventral view 14 retrolateral view). E = embolus; RTA = retrolateral tibial apophysis; T = tegulum; VTA = ventral tibial apophysis. Scale bar: 0.1 mm.
and lateral with many small, scattered, brown spots; venter with 4 pairs of longitudinal yellow spots in the middle; spinnerets brown.

Palp (Figs 13, 14). Retrolateral tibial apophysis longer than tibia, with small, basal protuberance (Fig. 14), apically pointed; ventral tibia apophysis digitiform, 1.5× longer.

**Figures 15, 16.** *Lysiteles longensis* sp. nov., epigyne/vulva (15 ventral view 16 dorsal view). CD = copulatory duct; CO = copulatory opening; FD = fertilization duct; S = spermatheca. Scale bar: 0.1 mm.
Crab spiders from western China

than wide, short and broad, apically curved; extending along tegular margin. Embolus with thick base and a strong, dorsally bent apical end. Tip lopped and in counterclockwise direction, base at about 10 o’clock, tip at about 2 o’clock; tegulum as long as wide.

Figure 17. Records of the new species from the Xiaolong Mountains in Gansu Province, China.
Female. Habitus as in Figs 11, 12. Total length 3.27. Prosoma 1.38 long, 1.17 wide. Opisthosoma 1.89 long, 1.60 wide. Carapace blackish brown. Other characteristics as those of males. Eye sizes and interdistances: AME 0.06, ALE 0.09, PME 0.05, PLE 0.10, AME–AME 0.19, AME–ALE 0.17, PME–PME 0.29, PME–PLE 0.26, AME–PME 0.20, ALE–PLE 0.17. MOA 0.27 long, front width 0.31, back width 0.39. Sternum, chelicerae, labium, and maxillae blackish brown. Legs yellowish and spinous. Leg measurements: I 4.26 (1.32, 0.38, 0.99, 0.96, 0.61); II 4.20 (1.31, 0.41, 1.00, 0.91, 0.57); III 2.49 (0.58, 0.33, 0.68, 0.50, 0.40); IV 2.71 (0.65, 0.40, 0.68, 0.55, 0.43). Leg spination: I Fe: d1, p3; Pa: d1; Ti: d3, p2, r3, v1; Mt: p4, r4; II Fe: d2; Ti: d2, p2, r2, v1; Mt: p3, r3, v2; III Fe: d2; Pa: d1; Ti: d2, p2, r2; Mt: p2, r2, v1; IV: Fe: d1; Pa: d1; Ti: d1, p2, r1; Mt: p1, r1. Opisthosoma dorsum with symmetrical, longitudinal, reddish-brown stripes and lateral with scattered patches. Venter yellow in the middle and black at the sides.

Epigyne (Figs 15, 16). Epigyne ca 1.7× wider than long. Atrium large, sclerotized plate oval, copulatory openings originate medially; sclerotic fold well developed. Copulatory ducts thick, as wide as spermathecae; spermathecae suboval, 1.4× wider than long, spaced by about 0.5 diameters of the vulva.

Distribution. Known only from the type locality in Gansu Province, China (Fig. 17).

Acknowledgements

We are grateful to the subject editor Dr. Shuqiang Li and the reviewer Dr. Yuri Marusik for providing significant comments on the manuscript. We are also grateful to Dr. Xingping Wang (University of Florida) for improving the English of the manuscript, and to Ph.D. Zhaoyi Li and Mr. Xinyuan Bai (Hebei University) for collecting specimens. Thanks are given to Mr. Qi Liu and Ms. Shuqin Huo for their assistance during the fieldwork. This work was supported by the National Natural Science Foundation of China (no. 32170468).

References


Description of a new montane freshwater crab (Arthropoda, Malacostraca, Decapoda, Potamonautidae) from the Eastern Cape, South Africa

Nasreen Peer¹, Gavin Gouws², Lazola Maliwa³, Nigel Barker⁴, Paul Juby⁴, Renzo Perissinotto⁵

¹ Department of Botany and Zoology, Stellenbosch University, Merriman Avenue, Stellenbosch, 7600, South Africa  
² National Research Foundation – South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity, Private Bag 1015, Grahamstown, 6140, South Africa  
³ Albany Museum, 40 Somerset Street, Grahamstown, 6139, South Africa  
⁴ Department of Plant and Soil Sciences, University of Pretoria, Private Bag X20, Hatfield, 0028, Pretoria, South Africa  
⁵ Institute for Coastal & Marine Research, Nelson Mandela University, Gqeberha, 6031, South Africa

Corresponding author: Nasreen Peer (peer.nasreen@gmail.com)

Academic editor: Célio Magalhães | Received 20 January 2023 | Accepted 6 March 2023 | Published 4 May 2023


Abstract
A new species of freshwater crab, Potamonautes amathole sp. nov., is described from the Winterberg-Amathole mountain range in the Eastern Cape Province, South Africa. Morphologically, P. amathole Peer & Gouws, sp. nov. most closely resembles P. tuerkayi but can be distinguished by key morphological characters including the variation in the shape of the subterminal segment of gonopod 2 between both species. Genetically, P. amathole Peer & Gouws, sp. nov. is placed within the clade of small-bodied, mountain-dwelling crabs including P. parvispina, P. parvicorpus, P. brincki, P. tuerkayi, P. baziya, and P. depressus. The new species is found in slow-moving mountain streams and pools at high altitudes. The continued discovery and description of new freshwater crab species reinforces the need for ongoing research, especially in under-sampled regions.

Keywords
Afrotropical Region, Brachyura, high altitude streams, molecular analyses, morphology, taxonomy
Introduction

In South Africa, the genera *Potamonautes* and *Maritimonautes* represent the freshwater crabs with a total of 26 described species since the last published descriptions (Daniels et al. 2022). Although the freshwater crabs in South Africa are a fairly well-studied group, morphological and molecular analyses continue to reveal new undescribed species, many of which are cryptic and have thus been mistaken for previously described species (Daniels et al. 1998, 2022; Phiri and Daniels 2014, 2016; Peer et al. 2017).

Recently, several new species have been described from natural forest habitats (Peer et al. 2015; Daniels 2017; Daniels et al. 2019, 2021), which only comprise a small percentage of South Africa’s total land cover (0.4%) but boast the highest biodiversity per hectare (Geldenhuys and MacDevette 1989). Although mostly fragmented, the Knysna and Amathole Forest complexes are the two largest remaining patches of natural forest in South Africa, with the latter situated in the Amathole Mountain Range along the Great Escarpment (Mucina and Rutherford 2006). The Great Escarpment, as outlined by Clark et al. (2011a), refers to a semi-continuous mountain range that transcends many southern African borders, experiencing a range of climatic conditions.

Aside from high forest biodiversity, the Amathole Mountain Range, forming part of the escarpment between the Sneeuberg range in the west and the Drakensberg range in the east, is considered to display great diversity across habitat types, as well as high levels of endemism in terms of flora (Clark et al. 2011a). Despite this, habitats in the region are still poorly sampled in terms of fauna (Kok et al. 2012; Taylor et al. 2020).

In this paper, we describe *P. amathole* sp. nov. from the Hogsback and Katberg Forests in the Amathole Mountains of the Eastern Cape. NP and GG wrote the taxonomic part of this study, including the description of the new species, while the contribution of the other authors dealt with genetic analyses, natural history, and ecological observations.

Materials and methods

Crab collection

Crabs were collected from three localities (Table 1, Fig. 1) located in the Winterberg-Amathole mountain range.

Crabs were collected by hand or net and preserved in 70% ethanol.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site name</th>
<th>Coordinates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Katberg State Forest</td>
<td>32°28.43’S, 26°40.10’E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hogsback Arboretum</td>
<td>32°35.42’S, 26°56.05’E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hogsback Waterfall</td>
<td>32°36.40’S, 26°57.80’E</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Genetic analyses

The genetic placement and relationships of the proposed new species were examined using data generated in two sequential studies. For the first study, total genomic DNA was extracted from 0.5–1 mg of pereiopod muscle tissue from specimens collected from Hogsback and Katberg during 2013. Tissue was rinsed in sterile water and DNA was extracted using an Invisorb Spin Tissue Mini Kit (Invitek Molecular, Berlin), following the manufacturer’s protocol.

A fragment of the large ribosomal subunit 16S mitochondrial marker was amplified by Polymerase Chain Reaction, using the primers of Cunningham et al. (1992: 16Sar and 16Sbr). PCRs were completed in 50 µL volumes, comprising 1 X PCR reaction buffer, 5 µL template DNA, 2 mM MgCl₂, 0.2 mM deoxynucleotide triphosphate (dNTP), 0.2 µM of each primer, and 0.5 U Taq polymerase. The thermocycling profile included an initial denaturing at 95 °C for 5 min, 30 cycles of 95 °C for 45 s, 45 °C for 45 s and 72 °C for 1.5 min, followed by a final extension of 72 °C for 5 min. Amplification was confirmed by gel electrophoresis in a 0.5% agarose gel stained with SYBR Green (ThermoFisher Scientific, Waltham, Massachusetts) and viewed with a UV-transilluminator. PCR products were purified with an Invisorb PCRapace Quick purification kit (Invitek Molecular). Purified products were cycle-sequenced in both forward and reverse directions using the ABI Big Dye Sequencing kit v. 3.1. (Applied Biosystems, Austin, Texas). Cycle-sequencing products were precipitated using a NaAc-ethanol procedure (Sambrook and Russell 2001) and analysed on an ABI 3100 Genetic Analyser at Rhodes University, South Africa. Consensus sequences were created from the forward and reverse sequences of each sample, correcting base ambiguities, using SEQUENCHER v. 4.5 (GeneCodes Corporation).

**Figure 1.** Map showing the location of the Amathole Mountain Range sampling sites (black markers) in relation to nearby towns and villages (white points). South Africa National Land Cover (SANLC) 2018 map layer shows land cover to be predominantly indigenous forest and plantations with residential area nearby.
In the second study, DNA was extracted from specimens collected from Hogsback during 2018, using a PureLink Miniprep kit (Invitrogen, Carlsbad, California). A fragment of the protein-coding mtDNA cytochrome c oxidase subunit I (COI) gene was amplified and sequenced using the approach described by Gouws et al. (2015). Sequences were checked and edited as described therein.

**Data analyses**

Data sets for each of the 16S and COI fragments included data generated in the present study and published data for all described southern African *Potamonautes* species, as compiled previously (Gouws et al. 2015). GenBank accession numbers and sources for the published data are provided in Suppl. material 1: table S1. *Potamonautes danielsi*, described by Peer et al. (2017), was represented by an individual (NPP2) from Network E within a wider lineage of *P. sidneyi* in the study by Gouws et al. (2015); this individual was sampled from the type locality (Mtamvuna River) of *P. danielsi*. Similarly, the *P. brincki* sequences included by Gouws et al. (2015) were ascribed to *P. tuerkayi* in the present study. The latter species was described as distinct from *P. brincki* by Wood and Daniels (2016) with the type locality being Fernkloof, from where the aforementioned *P. brincki* specimens were sampled for the study by Daniels et al. (2002). An alternative COI sequence (Wood and Daniels 2016: GenBank accession number KU561507) was included for *P. brincki*; unfortunately, no other 16S sequence was available. The *P. lividus* specimen from Eswatini (formerly Swaziland) included in the study by Gouws et al. (2015) has subsequently been assigned to *P. valles* (Daniels et al. 2022). The previously-compiled data were also supplemented with data for other South African species described subsequent to the Gouws et al. (2015) study, including *P. baziya* (Daniels et al. 2021: GenBank accession number 16S – OK482902, COI – OK489798), *P. mariepskoppie* (Daniels et al. 2021: 16S – OK482901, COI – OK489797), *P. ngoyensis* (Daniels et al. 2019: 16S – MK607207, COI – MK607221), *P. ntendekaensis* (Daniels et al. 2019: 16S – MK607196, COI – MK607210) and *P. mhlophe* (Daniels 2017: 16S – MF693159, COI – MF693167). In a recent systematic revision, Cumberlidge and Daniels (2022) reassigned several of the *Potamonautes* species included by Gouws et al. (2015) to the genera *Arcopotamonautes* (*A. bellarussus*, *A. lirrangensis*, *A. platynotes* and *A. raybouldi*), *Maritimonautes* (*M. calcaratus*, *M. choloensis*, *M. namuliensis* and *M. obesus*) and *Rotundopotamonautes* (*R. ohdneri* and *R. subukia*). The representatives of *Maritimonautes* were used as outgroups in the present study, due to their basal placement relative to *Potamonautes* (Cumberlidge and Daniels 2022). Representatives of other genera were excluded from these analyses.

ClustalX2 (Larkin et al. 2007) was used to align the COI partition, while the 16S data were aligned using MAFFT 6.956 (Katoh and Toh 2008) with an iterative refinement strategy (L-INS-i) (Katoh et al. 2005). As corresponding 16S and COI sequences were not successfully obtained for every individual included in the present study, the 16S and COI data sets were analysed separately. Phylogenetic relationships were determined using Maximum Likelihood (ML) analyses, as implemented in PAUP*4.0a168.
(Swofford 2003). Prior to execution, the optimal models of nucleotide substitution for each of the 16S and COI data sets were identified using jModelTest 2.1.4 (Darriba et al. 2012), with model selection determined using the Akaike (1974) Information Criterion. In the ML analyses, heuristic tree searches were executed, with TBR branch-swapping of a tree obtained through a random addition of taxa, with 100 such replicates employed. Due to computational constraints, nodal support was evaluated through Bayesian Posterior Probabilities (BPPs), with values above 0.95 being regarded as evidence of support. These were generated through Bayesian inferences as described in Gouws et al. (2015) but sampling the posterior distribution every 5 000 generations. Uncorrected sequence divergences among individuals were calculated using PAUP.

**Morphological measurement and description**

Morphological variables were measured using a pair of Vernier callipers. A Canon Powershot G12 digital camera was used to photograph carapaces and appendages, while a Nikon SMZ25 microscope fitted with a Nikon Digital Sight DS-Fi2 camera was used for macro-examination and to take photos of gonopods and mouthparts.

**Abbreviations for depositories and provinces**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ISAM</td>
<td>Iziko South African Museum, Cape Town, South Africa;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>Eastern Cape;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>Western Cape;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KZN</td>
<td>KwaZulu–Natal.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abbreviations for all morphological and morphometric characters (following Gouws et al. 2001):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AW6</td>
<td>Width of sixth abdominal segment;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH</td>
<td>Carapace height;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CL</td>
<td>Carapace length;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLDL</td>
<td>Left cheliped, dactyl length;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRDL</td>
<td>Right cheliped, dactyl length;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRPL</td>
<td>Right cheliped, propodus length;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRPW</td>
<td>Right cheliped, propodus width;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWA</td>
<td>Distance between exorbital teeth;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWW</td>
<td>Carapace widest width;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWP</td>
<td>Carapace posterior width;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ED</td>
<td>Distance between orbits;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCPL</td>
<td>Major cheliped propodus length;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCPW</td>
<td>Major cheliped propodus width;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ML</td>
<td>Merus length;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MW</td>
<td>Merus width;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PFCD  Distance between postfrontal crest and anterior margin;
P2ML  Pereopod 2, merus length;
P2MW  Pereopod 2, merus width;
s2/s3  First sternal groove (suture between the second and third sulci);
s3/s4  Second sternal groove (suture between the third and fourth sulci).

Results

Genetic analyses

New sequences generated in the present study were lodged in GenBank (16S: accession numbers OQ559329–OQ559337; COI: OQ558909–OQ558911). The 16S alignment was 549 nucleotides in length. The ML analysis, using the parameters of the optimal model (base frequencies: A = 0.369, C = 0.122, G = 0.163 and T = 0.346; rate matrix: \( R_{A\rightarrow C} = 0.571, R_{A\rightarrow G} = 5.756, R_{A\rightarrow T} = R_{G\rightarrow G} = 1.000, R_{C\rightarrow G} = R_{C\rightarrow T} = 2.251; \alpha = 0.341 \) for the gamma distribution of rate variation), produced the topology (-lnL = 3754.743) presented in Fig. 2.

The COI alignment was 660 nucleotides in length. The optimal model had base frequencies of A = 0.292, C = 0.184, G = 0.154 and T = 0.371, a rate matrix of \( R_{A\rightarrow C} = 4.203, R_{A\rightarrow G} = 10.249, R_{A\rightarrow T} = 2.385, R_{C\rightarrow G} = R_{C\rightarrow T} = 1.000, R_{C\rightarrow T} = 31.047, \) a proportion of invariant sites (I = 0.549) and a gamma distribution of rate variation (\( \alpha = 1.280 \)). The tree produced by the ML analysis is shown as Fig. 3.

Figure 2. The most likely topology (-lnL = 3754.743) obtained in the Maximum-Likelihood analysis of a 549 nucleotide 16S rRNA alignment, depicting relationships between potamonautilid freshwater crabs sampled from Hogsback and Katberg (Eastern Cape, South Africa) and known southern African Potamonautes species. Nodal support in the form of Bayesian Posterior Probabilities (BPPs) are indicated above the branches, with only BPPs > 0.95 shown. Species of Maritimonautes are included as outgroups.

Daniels, 2017 (see Figs 2 and 3); the generally accepted phylogenetic placement of these species is within the last of the aforementioned clades (see Daniels 2017; Daniels et al. 2019, 2021; Cumberlidge and Daniels 2022), as in the 16S topology.
Of relevance to the current study, the crabs sampled from Hogsback and Katberg were placed in two separate clades. In the 16S topology, samples from Hogsback and Katberg were placed within the clade of small-bodied, mountain-dwelling species, sister to *P. parvispina*, in a larger well-supported clade (BPP = 0.98) of mountain-dwelling Potamonautidae.
ing species from the Western Cape (\textit{P. parvicorpus}, \textit{P. parvispina}, and \textit{P. tuerkayi}), which was sister to a clade containing those (\textit{P. baziya}, \textit{P. clarus}, and \textit{P. depressus}) from the Drakensberg in the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal. Other samples from Hogsback, including one collected sympatrically with the aforementioned at the Hogsback Arboretum, were allied to \textit{P. danielsi} within the clade of IOCB forest-dwelling species with high support (BPP 1.00). In the COI topology, where only samples from Hogsback were included, these were placed similarly within the clade of mountain-dwelling species. These results suggest the presence of two distinct species among the crabs sampled from Hogsback and Katberg.

Uncorrected sequence divergences among individuals are presented in Suppl. material 1: table S2. The Hogsback specimens within the clade of IOCB species were 1.5% divergent from \textit{P. danielsi}. Given their close affinity and the general trends in terms of sequence divergence, and the strong support (BPP = 1.00) for the clade formed by these specimens and \textit{P. danielsi}, it is considered that these are conspecific. The Hogsback and Katberg specimens within the mountain-dwelling clade were 5.4 to 8.9% divergent from the other species in this clade and were 5.8 to 8.3% divergent from their sister-taxon (\textit{P. parvispina}). In the context of the above divergences among known species, the Hogsback and Katberg specimens in this clade are considered to be a distinct species, described below. The Hogsback specimens were also 7.6–8.0% divergent from those collected in sympatry or near-sympatry but belonging to the IOCB clade.

For the COI data, where the only specimens included from Hogsback belonged to the clade of mountain-dwelling species, uncorrected sequence divergences between these specimens and other species in that clade ranged from 7.4 to 10.9%. With the exception of the comparison between \textit{P. barbarai} and \textit{P. granularis} (0.5%), previously described species were 2.4 to 18.4% divergent. Comparatively, these divergences again support the taxonomic distinctiveness of the Hogsback (and, by extension, Katberg) specimens.

**Taxonomic description**

**Genus \textit{Potamonautes}**

\textit{Potamonautes amathole} Peer & Gouws, sp. nov.

https://zoobank.org/E47B3AFA-479B-496E-B7E3-F1F13849CEC2

**Type series. Holotype:** male, CL = 25.3 mm (Table 2), cascading stream in the Katberg State Forest (32°28’26.4"S, 26°40’05.9"E, elevation 1070 m), 25 October 2018, L. Maliwa, N. Miranda and N. Peer legit (MB-A094813). Allotype: female, CL = 24.9 mm (Table 2), collection details as per holotype (MB-A094814). **Paratypes:** (Table 2) collection details same as above, MB-A094815 (8 ♂, 4 ♀). Hogsback Arboretum, MB-A094816 (2 ♀), 32°35’25.2"S, 26°56’02.7"E, elevation 1235 m, 24 October 2018, L. Maliwa, N. Miranda and N. Peer legit. Madonna and Child Waterfall, Hogsback, MB-A094817 (1 ♂, 1 ♀); 32°36’24.4"S, 26°57’48.2"E, elevation 1092 m, 24 October 2018, L. Maliwa, N. Miranda and N. Peer legit.
Diagnosis. *Potamonautes amathole* sp. nov. exhibits a smooth carapace, flank and epibranchial region, with a rounded anterolateral margin and a narrow posterior end. Postfrontal crest complete. Dactyl of major cheliped highly arched. Pereopod 4 is longest. Bi-lobed maxillary palp with no flange.

**Description of holotype. Carapace** (Fig. 4). Cephalothorax ovoid, dorsally flattened, maximum height and width at anterior third (CH/CL = 0.5, CWW/CL = 1.47). Branchial region rounded. Anterior margin straight, lying on same horizontal plane as anterolateral margin; anterolateral margin slightly granulated. Urogastric grooves well-defined; cardiac and cervical grooves well-defined where attached to urogastric groove, becoming poorly defined and shallow towards edge of carapace. Epigastric lobes well-defined by two indentations forked from midpoint of postfrontal crest. Postfrontal crest complete, straight, and distinct, curving down at epibranchial region, sloping backwards to join anterolateral margin. Exoribital teeth present. Epibranchial teeth absent. Carapace brown with orange-brown to purple-brown limbs when alive.

**Sternites** (Fig. 4b). Sternites 1 and 2 fused, no sulcus. Second sulcus (s2/s3) prominent across sternum and third sulcus (s3/s4) complete, deep, projecting down medially towards abdomen.

**Third maxilliped** (Figs 4c, 5e). Filling entire buccal frame except oval respiratory openings at top lateral corners. Ischium slightly scabrous, absence of vertical groove. Flagellum on exopod of third maxilliped curving upwards at distal ends.

**Mandibular palp** (Fig. 5c, d). Consists of two segments. Terminal segment undivided, with dense tuft of setae on posterior proximal surface, margins hirsute. Subterminal segment short, thickened distally, almost round in appearance.
A new montane freshwater crab from South Africa

Figure 4. *Potamonautes amathole* sp. nov. male holotype (MB-A094813) **a** dorsal view **b** ventral view, and **c** cephalothorax, frontal aspect. Scale bar: 10 mm.
Figure 5. *Potamonautes amathole* sp. nov. male holotype (MB-A094813) **a** major cheliped **b** minor cheliped **c** right mandibular palp posterior view **d** right mandibular palp anterior view **e** 3rd maxilliped **f** left gonopod 1 anterior view **g** left gonopod 1 posterior view **h** left gonopod 2 posterior view, and **i** left gonopod 2 anterior view. Scale bars: 10 mm (**a, b**); 1 mm (**c, d**); 5 mm (**e–i**).
Pereopods (Figs 4a, c, 5a, b). General right-handedness. Inequality of chelae (CRDL/CLDL = 1.41). Dactyl of major chela highly arched, large interspace formed in major cheliped when fingers closed, slim interspace formed when minor cheliped closed. Propodus fairly slim (CRPW/CRPL = 0.41), exhibiting 17 cutting teeth on major dactyl and 15 cutting teeth on pollex, some larger and more prominent. Carpi on either side with one prominent tooth and two rudimentary teeth. Meri granulated with spine on anterior surface. Slender pereopods (P2: ML/MW = 3.75; P5: ML/MW = 3.61), pereopod 4 longest, pereopod 5 shortest. Ventral margins of propodi smooth, dorsal margins bearing fine serration, dactyli serrated, ending in sharp points.

Pleon (Fig. 4b). Somites 1–6 four sided, with triangular distally-rounded terminal segment (telson). First 5 somites broad and short; somite 6 and telson longer.

Pleopods (Fig. 5f–i). Gonopod 1 terminal segment short, 0.24 length of subterminal segment, widest at base, tapering, ends in sharp point at distal end of terminal segment. Medial margin slightly irregular, inner lateral margin curved, margins hirsute. Terminal segment curves away from medial line when viewed posteriorly. Longitudinal groove extending the length of both subterminal and terminal segment, visible on dorsal surface. Gonopod 2 consisting of two segments; terminal segment 0.57 times length of subterminal segment, filamentous; subterminal segment widest at base, tapering gently inward 0.4 of length, forming narrow process supporting terminal segment. Gonopod 2 with straight subterminal segment, terminal segment curves inward toward medial line.

Variation. The major cheliped is not always distinctly arched, especially in females and juveniles.

Live colouration. Colouration varies between orange-brown to a darker purplish-brown when alive. Tips of the dactyli may be paler in colour, displaying as orange or paler brown/purple.

Distribution. Currently known only from the Katberg State Forest, the Hogsback State Forest, Madonna and Child Falls and the Hogsback Arboretum, all situated in the Amathole Mountain Range in the Eastern Cape province of South Africa.

Etymology. The species is named after the Amathole Mountains, part of the Winterberg-Amathole mountain range complex, located on the Great Escarpment in the Eastern Cape. It is currently thought to be endemic to this region. The isiXhosa name ‘Amathole’ translates to ‘calves’ in English and refers to the mountain range, the forest, and the municipal district.

Remarks. *Potamonautes amathole* sp. nov. is genetically and morphologically most similar to the Western Cape small-bodied montane freshwater crabs, i.e., *P. brincki* (Bott, 1960), *P. parvispina* Stewart, 1997, *P. parvicorpus* Daniels, Stewart & Burmeister, 2001, and *P. tuerkayi* Wood & Daniels, 2016. Morphologically, the species can be most easily distinguished from *P. parvispina* by the latter’s small but pronounced epibranchial tooth. *Potamonautes parvicorpus* bears slightly arched chelipeds, an arched carapace, and a poorly developed postfrontal crest, while the new species has highly arched major chelipeds, a flattened carapace and a distinct postfrontal crest. *Potamonautes brincki* also has an arched carapace as well as a partitioned terminal segment of the
mandibular palp with a setae-covered flange. *Potamonautes amathole* sp. nov. has a unilobed terminal segment of the mandibular palp with no flange. Of all the Western Cape montane freshwater crabs, *P. tuerkayi* is the most similar to *P. amathole* sp. nov. However, *P. tuerkayi* has a sharply tapering subterminal segment of gonopod 2, forming a rounded subterminal base, while in *P. amathole* sp. nov. this tapering is gradual, forming a sloping instead of a rounded base. Geographically, the above-mentioned species are all confined to the Cape Fold Mountain region, with *P. amathole* sp. nov. being the first described small-bodied montane freshwater crab from the Eastern Cape part of the Great Escarpment.

*Potamonautes depressus* and *P. clarus* are two species of highland river crabs in the Drakensberg Mountain range. Although superficially similar to *P. amathole* sp. nov. in terms of a flattened carapace and slender limbs, morphological differences do exist in the structure of the mandibular palp and carapace depression. In *P. clarus*, a bright orange species, the mandibular palp has a flange on the terminal segment, while this is absent in *P. amathole*. *Potamonautes depressus* has an extremely flattened carapace, with CH/CL ranging from 0.38–0.43. In *P. amathole* sp. nov., this depression of the carapace is less extreme with a ratio ranging from 0.43–0.51. Both of these species are confined to fast-flowing rivers in the Drakensberg highlands. In most other *Potamonautes* spp., pereopod 3 is the longest. However, in *P. amathole* sp. nov., pereopod 4 appears to be the longest.

**Habitat and ecology.** Hogsback and Katberg are both situated in the Keiskamma River catchment. Both sites consist of Southern Mistbelt Forest (FoZ 3), known to be tall, multi-layered, species-rich forests dominated by *Afrocarpus falcatus*, *Celtis africana*, *Calodendrum capense*, *Vepris lanceolata*, and *Zanthoxylum davyi* (Mucina and Rutherford 2006). Within the forest and grassland, patches of Eastern Temperate Freshwater Wetlands (AZf3) can be found (Mucina and Rutherford 2006).

The Hogsback (Madonna and Child) Waterfall site is situated inside the Hogsback State Forest. The habitat is represented by a tall, high-flowing stream with different biotopes and pools rich in macro-invertebrate diversity, i.e., Ephemeroptera, Coleoptera, Hemiptera, Diptera, Trichoptera, Odonata, and Plecoptera (Griffiths et al. 2015). The substrate is largely bedrock with sand and large stones. The site is characterised by a diversity of flora species, including *Canthium ciliatum*, *Protorhus longifolia*, *Afrocarpus falcatus*, and *Scolopia mundii* (Hawley et al. 2004; Mucina and Rutherford 2006).

The second site is situated inside the Hogsback Arboretum Park, downstream from the 39 Steps Waterfall. The habitat is represented by a small stream with pools and the substrate is largely sand with rocks. The edge of the stream is represented by marginal vegetation (i.e., *Pseudoschoenus inanis*) with tree canopy cover and burrows (Griffiths et al. 2015). The site is characterised by a diversity of planted flora species.

The Katberg site is situated in the montane Katberg State Forest. This habitat is comprised of a trickling stream on a very steep slope. The habitat is represented by low and clean water with some other macro-invertebrate diversity, i.e., Ephemeroptera, Coleoptera, Hemiptera, Diptera, Trichoptera, and Odonata (Griffiths et al. 2015). The substrate is largely bedrock with sand and stones. The edge of the stream is represented
by marginal vegetation with dense tree canopy cover and burrows. The site is characterised by a diversity of flora species, including *C. ciliatum*, and *P. longifolia* (Hawley et al. 2004; Mucina and Rutherford 2006).

At the Hogsback Arboretum site, *P. amathole* sp. nov. co-occurs with *P. danielsi*. *Potamonautes danielsi* is also found at the nearby Municipal Dam.

**Discussion**

Resolving the distribution of southern African potamonautids is often difficult due to the general cryptic nature of this genus (Daniels et al. 2022). However, despite this, *Potamonautes amathole* sp. nov. can be distinguished from its sister species both genetically and morphologically. Providing detailed descriptions and highlighting morphological differences also facilitates accurate species records and highlights potentially new species, not just by the scientific community but also from citizen scientist observations (Daniels et al. 2022). Considering that more extensive sampling is required to fully explore potamonautid diversity, especially in high altitude and under-sampled regions, these citizen science observations play a significant role in the taxonomy of freshwater brachyurans.

16S Sequence divergences among previously known species ranged from 2.1 to 16.9%; the exception being the comparison between *P. dentatus* and *P. mhlophe* (1.5%). The indication of the *P. danielsi* Hogsback population, alongside the morphological identification of the specimen used in a study by Gouws et al. (2018), extends the known range of *P. danielsi* (see Peer et al. 2017) further south-westward and into the broader Amathole Forest and the Albany Thicket vegetation biomes (sensu Mucina and Rutherford 2006).

Although South African freshwater crabs have been extensively researched, we continue to find and describe new species (Daniels et al. 2021, 2022). This is partly due to ongoing efforts to target poorly sampled areas. Although the group has been well-studied in the KwaZulu-Natal and Western Cape provinces, this paper describes only the second montane freshwater crab from the Eastern Cape (the first being *P. baziya*). In KZN, two montane freshwater crabs, i.e., *P. clarus* and *P. depressus*, together with *P. baziya* represent the Drakensberg Escarpment species, with all three being closely related. In the Western Cape, *P. parvispina*, sister species to *P. amathole* sp. nov., is located within the Cederberg region. Myburgh and Daniels (2022) considered the speciation of the three additional Western Cape montane species, i.e., *P. brincki*, *P. tuerkayi*, and *P. parvicorpus*, and found an east/west separation defined by the Cape Fold Mountains. The results from this study and that of Daniels et al. (2021) indicate that *P. amathole* sp. nov. diverged before the separation of the Cape Fold montane species. Several routes of palaeo- and current connectivity along the Great Escarpment have been demonstrated for floristic species (Clark et al. 2011a, b; Janks 2014) with Galley et al. (2007) proposing a radiation from the Cape in a north-east direction towards the Drakensberg mountains, passing through the Winterberg-Amathole mountain range.
A similar pattern of connectivity has been proposed for some invertebrate species including coleopterans (Bilton 2015) and ephemeropterans (Taylor et al. 2020), although this requires more in-depth investigation.

Barnes and Daniels (2019), in a study of onychophoran velvet worms from forests in the Winterberg-Amathole mountain range, highlighted that connectivity is often disrupted by forest fragmentation, especially in poorly conserved areas. This reinforces the need to target the under-sampled regions of South Africa, including the Great Escarpment, in order to properly describe biodiversity along this gradient and understand the phylogeographic patterns that occur along this system. This information, especially regarding endemic species, is crucial to highlight the need for more effective protection of South Africa’s freshwater systems.

Acknowledgements

Dr NAF Miranda is thanked for his invaluable efforts in the field. This work is based on the research supported by the South African Research Chairs Initiative of the Department of Science and Technology (DST) and National Research Foundation (NRF) of South Africa. Any opinion, finding, and conclusion or recommendation expressed in this material is that of the author(s) and the NRF does not accept any liability in this regard. The genetic study presented here was partly supported by a Competitive Programme for Rated Researchers (CPRR13082029507) grant from the National Research Foundation.

References


A new montane freshwater crab from South Africa


A new montane freshwater crab from South Africa


**Supplementary material I**

**Supplementary information**
Authors: Gavin Gouws
Data type: phylogenetic

Explanation note: **table S1:** Representatives of valid southern African Potamonautes species included in the phylogenetic analysis used to contextualise divergences and confirm the affinities of specimens included in the current study. Four species of Maritomonautes were included as outgroup taxa. GenBank accession numbers for the 16S rRNA and cytochrome c oxidase subunit I (COI) included and the data sources are provided; **table S2:** Uncorrected sequence divergences, expressed as percentages, as calculated from a 549 nucleotide alignment of 16S rRNA mtDNA sequences (below diagonal) and a 660 nucleotide alignment of the protein-coding mtDNA cytochrome c oxidase subunit I (COI) fragment (above diagonal), between representative of Potamonautes included in the present study. Newly-sampled specimens are identified as Potamonautes danielsi and P. amathole sp. nov.

Copyright notice: This dataset is made available under the Open Database License (http://opendatacommons.org/licenses/odbl/1.0/). The Open Database License (ODbL) is a license agreement intended to allow users to freely share, modify, and use this Dataset while maintaining this same freedom for others, provided that the original source and author(s) are credited.

Link: https://doi.org/10.3897/zookeys.1160.100844.suppl1
Adult morphology and redescription of *Lestidiops indopacificus* (Ege, 1953), with comments on the features of related species (Teleostei, Aulopiformes, Paralepididae)

Hsuan-Ching Ho¹²³, Tzu-Yung Lin⁴

¹ National Museum of Marine Biology and Aquarium, Pingtung, Taiwan ² Institute of Marine Biology, National Donghua University, Pingtung, Taiwan ³ Australian Museum, Sydney, Australia ⁴ Department and Graduate Institute of Aquaculture, National Kaohsiung University of Science and Technology, Kaohsiung, Taiwan

Corresponding author: Tzu-Yung Lin (plextorx0428@nkust.edu.tw)

Academic editor: Nina Bogutskaya | Received 7 March 2023 | Accepted 14 April 2023 | Published 4 May 2023

https://zoobank.org/ED630F5B-916D-43AD-835B-11D2337EF8DA

Citation: Ho H-C, Lin T-Y (2023) Adult morphology and redescription of *Lestidiops indopacificus* (Ege, 1953), with comments on the features of related species (Teleostei, Aulopiformes, Paralepididae). ZooKeys 1160: 109–124. https://doi.org/10.3897/zookeys.1160.103110

Abstract

Two specimens representing the first known adults of *Lestidiops indopacificus* (Ege, 1953) are reported and described from Taiwan, and the validity and generic assignment of this species are confirmed. The origin of the pelvic fin directly below the dorsal-fin base shows that *L. indopacificus* belongs to the *L. mirabilis* species complex. It can be separated from its congeners by the position of the nostrils above the posterior end of the maxilla, the light body color with unevenly distributed melanophores in adults, and a distinct combination of meristic values and other morphological characteristics. New geographic records are reported for the two other current members of this species complex, *L. mirabilis* (Ege, 1933) and *L. extremus* (Ege, 1953). The diagnostic features that separate these three very similar species are discussed.

Keywords

Biodiversity, biogeography, ichthyofauna, ichthyology, taxonomy
Introduction

The barracudina genus *Lestidiops* was established by Hubbs (1916) but was assigned by Harry (1953a) to one of three subgenera in *Lestidium* before being elevated again by Rofen (1966) to a full genus. *Lestidiops* belongs to the naked paralepidids (subfamily Lestidiinae), which have a scaleless body except for the lateral-line, a single row of short teeth on the gill rakers, and more than 77 vertebrae. *Lestidiops* can be separated from the other genera of Lestidiinae by the following combination of features: head, snout, and body short to moderately slender; nostrils situated slightly to well before a vertical drawn through posterior end of maxilla; light organs and luminescent duct absent; anus close to tip of adpressed pelvic fin; anal-fin rays 25–32; lateral-line usually incomplete (i.e. not reaching caudal-fin base, except in some species); well-developed ventral adipose fin present between anus and anal fin; and unevenly distributed melanophores to uniform black in adults (Harry 1953a; Rofen 1966; this study). There are about 25 nominal species of *Lestidiops*, but no conclusion has been reached as to how many are valid (Ho pers. data).

Recently, two adult specimens of barracudina collected from off southern Taiwan were observed to have the pelvic-fin origin below the dorsal-fin base and no light organs or luminescent duct. They were initially identified as *Lestidiops mirabilis* (Ege, 1933) by the authors; however, both specimens had a much lighter body color compared to the uniformly dark brown to black body of specimens of *L. mirabilis*. More detailed examination has revealed that these two specimens represented the first adults specimens ever recorded of another, little-known species, *Lestidiops indopacificus* (Ege, 1953).

*Lestidiops indopacificus*, originally *Lestidium indopacificum*, was described based on juveniles collected from the Indian Ocean (Ege 1953: fig. 30), with many larval specimens taken from widely scattered sites across the Indo-West Pacific. At 31.0 mm SL, the holotype has been the largest specimen available until now. Although many specimens in collections have been putatively identified as this species, it has not yet been possible to confirm these. Most literature records have been based on the original description, and others were likely misidentifications (Ho pers. data).

*Lestidiops mirabilis*, originally *Paralepis mirabilis*, was described by Ege (1933) solely on its holotype (whereabouts unknown), which had been collected from the Sulawesi Sea in the western Pacific. Ege (1953) provided more details of this species based on many juveniles (<47 mm SL) from the tropical Indo-Pacific and western Atlantic oceans. Adults of this species are rather rare, and only a few specimens are known from scattered localities (e.g., Harry 1953b; Uyeno et al. 1983; Gloerfelt-Tarp and Kailola 1984; Ho and Huang 2022). Some additional adult specimens from various localities were examined in the present study.

Recently, Ho and Huang (2022) provided the first description of an adult *Lestidiops extremus* (Ege, 1953) from the Philippines and compared it with *L. mirabilis*. Another specimen from Myanmar, representing the first record of *L. extremus* in the eastern Indian Ocean, is reported in the present work.
This paper provides the first detailed description of adult-stage *L. indopacificus* and a comparison with its most closely related congeneric species. Morphological and biogeographical data pertaining to newly found specimens of *L. mirabilis* and *L. extremus* are also presented.

**Material and method**

Counts and measurements were made following Ho and Golani (2019) and Ho et al. (2019a), with the addition of pre-nostril length measured from the tip of the snout to the center of the nostrils. The examined specimens are deposited in the Australian Museum, Sydney, Australia (AMS), Kochi University, Kochi, Japan (BSKU), the National Museum of Marine Biology and Aquarium, Pingtung, Taiwan (NMMP-B), the Department of Zoology, National Museum of Nature and Science, Tsukuba, Japan (NSMT), the South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity, Grahamstown, South Africa (SAIAB), and the Zoological Museum, Natural History Museum of Denmark, Copenhagen, Denmark (ZMUC).

Morphometric data were not taken from specimens in poor condition, including those that had been bent or damaged. Abbreviations: DFO, dorsal-fin origin; AFO, anal-fin origin; VFO, pelvic-fin origin. D–A, horizontal distance between the origins of the dorsal and anal fins (= preanal length minus predorsal length) and V–A, horizontal distance between the origins of the pelvic and anal fins (= preanal length minus prepelvic length). PVLL, PDLL, and PALL are numbers of lateral-line scales before VFO, DFO, and AFO, respectively, TLL is the total number of lateral-line scales, including large and small scales. PVV, PDV, and PAV are numbers of vertebrae before VFO, DFO, and AFO, respectively, and PHV, CV, and TV are numbers of prehaemal, caudal, and total vertebrae, respectively.

Data used for comparison are taken from Ege (1953), Harry (1953b), and Ho and Huang (2022).

**Results**

**Family Paralepididae**

**Identity as *Lestidiops indopacificus***

The holotype of *Lestidium indopacificum* (ZMUC P2329237) is in rather poor condition, with its dorsal fin missing entirely. Ventral adipose fins are present on the abdominal ridge and well developed between the anus and the AFO. The eyes are large, the snout is short, and the eye diameter is about half the snout length. There are 32 prepelvic vertebrae, 49 preanal vertebrae, and 80 total vertebrae counted directly from the translucent...
There is neither a light organ around the eye nor a luminescent duct inside the abdominal cavity. The anus is located close to the tips of the adpressed pelvic fins.

The original data for the holotype (31.0 mm SL) provided by Ege (1953) recorded the predorsal length as 53.9% SL and the prepelvic length as 54.8% SL, which implies that the VFO is slightly behind the DFO and under the dorsal-fin base. No drawing of the holotype was provided, but it is notable that the drawing of the largest specimen (21.1 mm SL) provided in Ege (1953: fig. 26) shows its VFO situated on about the same vertical line as its DFO, which is slightly different from the relative positions of the fin origins implied by Ege (1953) for the holotype.

Rofen (1966) later assigned the species to *Lestidiops*, a conclusion accepted here. The position of the VFO slightly behind the DFO excludes it from *Stemonosudis* and *Dolichosudis*. The presence of ventral adipose fins and the position of the anus close to the tips of the adpressed pelvic fins exclude it from *Macroparalepis*, and the lack of light organs or a luminescent duct excludes it from *Lestidium* and *Lestrolepis*. The position of the nostrils above or before the posterior end of the maxilla and the presence of a small pelvic fin exclude it from *Uncisudis*.

If the inferred position of the VFO in the holotype is accepted as standard, *L. indopacificus* shares this feature only with *L. mirabilis* and, by this alone, these two species can be separated from all other nominal congeners. According to Ege (1953), *L. indopacificus* has 79–83 total vertebrae, 34–36 prehaemal vertebrae, and 29–32 anal-fin rays, data that match our two adult specimens well and which are clearly different from those of the two other current members of the *L. mirabilis* complex. In sum, all the available information allows the present specimens to be recognized as adults of *L. indopacificus*.

The *Lestidiops mirabilis* complex

The three species reported below share a distinctive characteristic, namely, the VFO lies clearly behind the DFO, either below the dorsal-fin base or slightly behind that point. Rofen (1966) included *L. mirabilis* and *L. extremus* in the *extremus* complex (= *L. mirabilis* complex herein). However, many members of the scaled genera in the Paralepidinae have in common the VFO behind the DFO and the VFO usually under or slightly behind the dorsal-fin base (Post 1987; Ho and Duhamel 2019). Members of *Lestidium atlanticum* complex, i.e. *L. atlanticum* Borodin, 1928, *L. orientale* Ho, Tsai & Li, 2019, and *L. longilucifer* Ho, Graham & Russell, 2020, usually have the VFO at about same vertical as the DFO, or with the VFO sometimes slightly before or behind the latter (Ho et al. 2020).

Based on our examination, the three current members of the *L. mirabilis* complex can be separated from other species of Paralepidinae by having 80–87 vertebrae in totalal, a single row of small teeth on the gill rakers (vs multiple rows of teeth, slender in many species), and a naked body except for the lateral-line scales (vs a body fully covered with scales). They can be separated from members of the *L. atlanticum* complex by the lack of a luminescent duct inside the abdominal cavity (vs a long duct extending to the gular region).

All other members of *Lestidiops*, regardless of their taxonomic validity, have the VFO situated slightly or well before the DFO.
*Lestidiops indopacificus* (Ege, 1953)

Figs 1, 2; Tables 1, 2

English name: Gray lightless barracudina


*Lestidiops indopacificus* (Ege, 1953): Rofen 1966: 301 (presumably in *Lestidiops*, maybe related to *L. mirabilis*).

*Lestidiops indopacificus* (Ege, 1953): Paxton et al. 1989: 246 (Australia, probably misidentification); Nakabo 2000: 368 (Ryukyus, juveniles only); Fukui and Ozawa 2004: 293 (list); Mundy 2005: 203 (larvae); Gomon 2008: 267 (Australia, misidentification of other *Lestidiops*).

**Material examined.** **Holotype:** ZMUC P2329237, in poor condition, 31.0 mm SL in original description. Adult specimens: NMMB-P34421 (2, 173‒195 mm SL), off Dong-gang, Pingtung, southwestern Taiwan, ca 300 m depth, 30 Jul. 2020.

**Diagnosis.** Species of *Lestidiops* in the *L. mirabilis* species complex with the VFO under dorsal-fin base and anus farther posteriorly; dorsal portion of body and lateral line covered with melanophores, but large unpigmented areas present on lower portions of head and abdomen; lateral-line scales: PDLL 32‒33, PVLL 33‒34, PALL 47‒48, TLL 66‒70; vertebrae: PDV 32‒33, PVV 33‒34, PAV 47‒48, PHV 34‒35, CV 44‒45, TV 80; total number of gill rakers 42‒44 (based on adult specimens). Juveniles without dark blotches or bands.

**Description.** Morphometric and meristic data as provided in Tables 1 and 2. Dorsal-fin rays 10; pectoral-fin rays 13‒14; pelvic-fin rays 10; anal-fin rays 30. Lateralline scales: PDLL 32‒33, PVLL 33‒34; PALL 47‒48; 66‒70 in total, with 58‒61 large scales and (in rear portion) 6‒9 small scales. Vertebrae: PDV 32‒33, PVV 33‒34, PAV 47‒48, PHV 34‒35, CV 44‒45, TV 80 in total. Gill rakers: 42‒44, with 8‒11 on upper limb (epibranchial) and 33‒34 on lower limb, including 21 on ceratobranchial + 12‒13 on hypobranchial.

Body moderately long, strongly compressed, depth at pectoral fin 12.7‒13.2 times in SL. Caudal peduncle short, its length 1.5‒1.6 times eye diameter. Ventral adipose fin very weakly developed along abdominal ridge between pectoral and pelvic fins, better developed on margin between pelvic and anal fins. Anus situated above tip of appressed pelvic fin (smaller specimens with anus slightly before fin tip), distance from VFO to anus about 3.5‒4.0 times in V‒A.

Head moderately slender, long-triangular, its length 4.0‒4.1 in SL; snout slender and pointed anteriorly, its length 1.7‒1.8 in HL. Mouth terminal, moderately large, its gape extending to about 1.5 times eye diameter in front of eye. Lower jaw slightly upturned at tip, with small distal tab of fleshy tissue. Eye small, its diameter 6.0‒6.2 in HL. No light organ around eye. First suborbital bone slender, fifth and sixth bones expanded posteriorly, and seventh small. Interorbital space narrow, its width 11.1‒11.2 in HL; some straight ridges present on top of head and snout. Two nostrils located...
directly above posterior end of maxilla, latter extending to point about 2/3 eye diameter in front of eye. Numerous sensory canals on snout, check, operculum, and jaws; numerous sensory pores on dorsal surface of snout and lower surface of lower jaw.

Gill filaments present on all four gill arches. Fourth arch mostly connected to gill chamber wall by membranes. Pseudobranchs present, their anterior halves included in a deep pocket.

DFO slightly in front of VFO, predorsal length 1.7 in SL. Pectoral-fin base behind posterior margin of gill cover, upper end of fin base slightly below horizontal drawn through lower margin of eye; no small pocket behind fin base. VFO directly under dorsal-fin base, pre-pelvic fin length 1.6 in SL. No axial scale behind pelvic-fin base (probably lost during trawling). Anal fin originating in posterior fourth of body, pre-anal length 1.3 in SL. Dorsal adipose fin over rear portion of anal-fin base, its base length about equal to eye diameter.

Two or three small fangs at tip of upper jaw, followed by single row of numerous small, retrorse teeth, these gradually becoming smaller on posterior part of jaw. Vomerine teeth absent. One or two fangs (either depressible or fixed) at front end of each lower jaw, followed by two rows of fangs arranged in about 6 pairs (more teeth arranged irregularly on right jaw of larger specimen); those of inner row long with knife-like tip and depressible; those in outer row much shorter, curved, and fixed, slightly embedded in tissue. Two rows of fangs on each palatine with anteriormost teeth arranged in 4 widely spaced pairs, those in outer row long and depressible, those in outer row small

Figure 1. Adults of *Lestidiops indopacificus* (Ege, 1953), NMMB-P34421 A, C 195 mm SL B, D 173 mm SL A, B fresh, photo by C.-N. Teng C, D preserved.
Figure 2. Close-up photos of *Lestidiops indopacificus* (NMMB-P34421, 173 mm SL), left side with anterior to left, showing pigmentation and positional details of various structures: **A** head, with arrow pointing to the nostrils; **B** anterior trunk, arrow point to abdominal ridge; **C** posterior trunk, with bars pointing to DFO (upper), VFO (lower left), and AFO (lower right); **D** tail, with arrow pointing to end of lateral line.
and fixed; single row of small, widely spaced, fixed teeth on posterior part of palatine. One row of small, straight teeth on each side of tongue.

Shield-shaped gill rakers present on epibranchial, ceratobranchial, and hypobranchial parts of each gill arch, each raker with 3–5 (rarely fewer) small teeth on broad base, these teeth barely extending upward beyond margin of gill arch. Teeth on pharyngeal arch short, arranged in oval patch with about 4 rows in middle. Single row of small teeth on fifth ceratobranchial.

Body scaleless, except for single row of lateral-line scales extending from above pectoral girdle to point above approximately two-thirds length of anal-fin base. Lateral-line scales slightly longer than wide, gradually becoming smaller and narrower posteriorly; 2 large pores on each upper and lower corner of most scales and 1 pore at front.

Table 1. Morphometric data, as in % SL and % HL, of three species in the *L. mirabilis* complex. * including four specimens from Harry (1953b).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><em>L. indopacificus</em></th>
<th><em>L. extremus</em></th>
<th><em>L. mirabilis</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NMMP-P34421</td>
<td>AMS I.36462-006</td>
<td>n = 8*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SL</strong></td>
<td>195</td>
<td>173</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In % SL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head length (HL)</td>
<td>24.7</td>
<td>24.3</td>
<td>21.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body depth</td>
<td>7.9</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td>6.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Predorsal length</td>
<td>60.1</td>
<td>59.8</td>
<td>57.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prepelvic length</td>
<td>60.8</td>
<td>60.7</td>
<td>63.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preanal length</td>
<td>75.8</td>
<td>75.7</td>
<td>76.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V–A</td>
<td>15.0</td>
<td>15.0</td>
<td>12.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D–A</td>
<td>15.8</td>
<td>16.0</td>
<td>18.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eye diameter</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>3.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interorbital width</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>2.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Snout length</td>
<td>14.0</td>
<td>14.1</td>
<td>10.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head depth</td>
<td>6.6</td>
<td>6.4</td>
<td>6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head width</td>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper jaw</td>
<td>12.1</td>
<td>12.1</td>
<td>10.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower jaw</td>
<td>16.2</td>
<td>16.9</td>
<td>13.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pectoral-fin length</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anal-fin base</td>
<td>17.5</td>
<td>17.7</td>
<td>17.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dorsal-fin base</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>3.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-nostril length</td>
<td>11.6</td>
<td>11.6</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caudal peduncle depth</td>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caudal peduncle length</td>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>6.6</td>
<td>5.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In % HL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pectoral-fin length</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>44.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eye diameter</td>
<td>16.2</td>
<td>16.6</td>
<td>17.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interorbital width</td>
<td>8.9</td>
<td>9.0</td>
<td>12.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Snout length</td>
<td>56.6</td>
<td>58.0</td>
<td>50.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head depth</td>
<td>26.8</td>
<td>26.1</td>
<td>28.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-nostril length</td>
<td>47.1</td>
<td>47.5</td>
<td>37.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper jaw</td>
<td>49.0</td>
<td>49.6</td>
<td>48.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower jaw</td>
<td>65.4</td>
<td>69.4</td>
<td>63.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
and 1 pore on each upper and lower corners of those scales on about posterior third of lateral line.

Luminescent duct absent.

**Coloration.** When fresh, body pale to light gray, somewhat translucent, unevenly covered with melanophores (Fig. 1A, B), and with abdomen bright white. Dorsal fourth of body densely covered with tiny melanophores; slightly larger melanophores beneath extending to lateral line and further downward, gradually becoming scattered; lower third of abdomen pale with large unpigmented areas. Dense melanophores on dorsal surface of head, anterior snout and jaws, and gular region; rest of head pale, with scattered melanophores except in large unpigmented areas on cheek and operculum. Inner surface of operculum pale with large black patch; mouth cavity pale. Abdominal ridge covered with dense melanophores (fewer and scattered in small specimens). Pectoral, dorsal and pelvic fins pale, with scattered melanophores; anal fin covered with dense melanophores except for the paler basal region; caudal fin covered with dense melanophores. When preserved, body light yellow in general, with pigmentation pattern similar to fresh condition (Figs 1C, D, 2A–D). Peritoneal membranes and stomach black; intestine pale.

**Distribution.** Juveniles widespread in the Indo-West Pacific from Taiwan to Australia and South Africa to French Polynesia (Ege 1953). Adults known only from two specimens collected from off southwestern Taiwan by bottom trawl at an estimated depth of around 300 m based on other fishes collected in the bycatch.

### Table 2. Meristic data of three species of the *Lestidiops mirabilis* species complex. Counts of both sides provided when different. * including four specimens from Harry (1953b). GR = gill rakers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><em>L. indopacificus</em></th>
<th><em>L. extremus</em></th>
<th><em>L. mirabilis</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NMMB-P34421</td>
<td>AMS I.36462-006</td>
<td>SAIAB 203471</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dorsal-fin rays</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anal-fin rays</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pectoral-fin rays</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvic-fin rays</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PVLL</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>33/34</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDLL</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>32/33</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PALL</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLL (large)</td>
<td>58/60</td>
<td>59/61</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLL (small)</td>
<td>9/6</td>
<td>7/9</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLL</td>
<td>67/66</td>
<td>66/70</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHV</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CV</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PVV</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDV</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAV</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GR, epibranchial</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GR, ceratobranchial</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GR, hypobranchial</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total GR</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* n = 9
**Lestidiops mirabilis** (Ege, 1933)

Fig. 3A; Tables 1, 2

English name: Strange pike smelt

*Paralepis mirabilis* Ege, 1933: 228 (type locality: Sulawesi Sea, western Pacific, 4°03’N, 123°26’E; holotype lost).


**Material examined.** Non-types: AMS I. 29537-004 (1, 210), FRV Kapala, 33°46’S, 151°49’E, east of Sydney, New South Wales, Australia, prawn trawl, 424–439 m, depth 16 Dec. 1980 • BSKU 27461 (1, 238), 27°43’N, 126°26’E, Okinawa Trough, 1,100 m depth, 9 Mar. 1978. NSMT-P 40253 (1, 261), off Suriname, no other data (possibly reported by Uyeno et al. 1983) • SAIAB 82055 (1, 276), 23°57’36”S, 35°51’36”E, off Mozambique, Western Indian Ocean, 814–831 m depth, 13 Oct. 2007. SAIAB 203473 (1, ca 180), 10°20’02.4”N, 96°24’14.4”E, Myanmar, Andaman Sea, 28 May 2015.

Other material (not examined but with reliable identification). BMNH 1984.1.1.50 (1, 145), 8°45’S, 114°17’E, south of Java, Indonesia, eastern Indian Ocean (listed by Gloerfelt-Tarp and Kailola 1984) • USNM 163317 (1, 163), CAS-SU18635 (1, 131.5), ANSP 72175 (1, 170), and POFI 628 (1, 170), all from Hawaii (listed by Harry 1953b; Rofen 1966).


**Distribution.** According to Ege (1953), circumglobal, including the western Atlantic, Indian, and central Pacific oceans based on larvae and juveniles, but more or less restricted to tropical regions. Adult specimens recorded from Indonesia (Gloerfelt-Tarp and Kailola 1984), Hawaii (Harry 1953b), Australia (Ho and Huang 2022), and Suriname and French Guiana (Uyeno et al. 1983); newly reported from Okinawa Trough, Myanmar, and Mozambique in present study. Bathymetric range 424–1,100 m for adults.

**Remarks.** The information on this species in Tables 1, 2 combines literature data with measurements and counts from examination of voucher specimens in earlier reports (e.g., Harry 1953b; Ho and Huang 2022) and additional specimens. Although *L. mirabilis* is a widespread species, adults appear to be rare, with only about 10 specimens known in collections. The specimen from Mozambique has the most lateral-line scales (85, including 63 large + 22 small), whereas others have 73–80 (64–67 + 8–16).
The number of large scales is fairly constant among specimens, but because most individuals were collected by bottom trawl and either suffered some degree of skin damage or had their body partly broken, it is possible that small scales at the posterior end of the lateral line are missing in some.
Harry (1953b) counted 11–13 pectoral-fin rays in four adults, whereas 13–14 such fin rays were counted in the present material. The first pectoral-fin element of paralepidids has two rays that are closely attached to each other, as can be seen in stained specimens (Ho et al. 2019a); Harry (1953b) probably counted them as a single ray, and, if so, his count should have been 12–14 rays.

The number of gill rakers also shows a large variation. The specimen from Suriname has 44 gill rakers in total (12 on the upper limb + 32 on the lower), whereas other individuals have 53–61 gill rakers (10–14 + 39–51). Rofen (1966) noticed that the vertebral counts are different among specimens from the western Atlantic Ocean (81–83) and New Caledonia (86), which he concluded was due to lack of data, not to the existence of different geographic populations. Our only western Atlantic specimen also has 81 vertebrae, whereas three Pacific specimens have 86 or 87 vertebrae. Examination of more specimens may prove that there are consistent differences among populations.

The only specimen reported from New Zealand (Roberts et al. 2015) shows multiple rows of fine teeth forming tooth plates (in key) and is likely a misidentification of an *Arctozenus* species.

**Lestidiops extremus** (Ege, 1953)

Fig. 3B; Tables 1, 2

English name: Extreme lightless barracudina

*Lestidium extremum* Ege, 1953: 136, fig. 29 (type locality: Molucca Passage, 0°18’S, 132°52’E [West Papua, Indonesia], ca 100 m depth). Rofen 1966: 301 (listed). Post 1972: 147 (type catalog; in *Lestidiops*, but possibly referable to *Uncisudis*).


Material examined. **Holotype:** ZMUC P.2136999 (21.8 mm TL), 0°18’S, 132°52’E, West Papua, Indonesia, ca 100 m.

**Non-types:** AMS I.36462-006 (1, 190 mm SL), about 80 km northwest off Camarines Norte Province, southeastern Luzon, Philippines, 14°50.46’N, 123°17.30’E–14°47.35’N, 123°22.33’E, otter trawl, 760–770 m, 27 Sep. 1995 • SAIAB 203471 (1, ca. 157), 12°42’59.4”N, 96°36’30”E, Myanmar, Andaman Sea, 25 May 2015.

**Diagnosis.** Species of *Lestidiops* with VFO clearly behind DFO and slightly behind posterior end of dorsal-fin base; anus well behind DFO; posterior end of maxilla extending nearly to vertical drawn through anterior margin of eye; lateral-line scales: PVLL 37–38, PDLL 32–34, PALL 50–51, TLL 68–71, including 62–63 large + 5–8 small scales; vertebrae: PHV 41, CV 39–40, PVV 38, PDV 32–33, PAL 50, TV 80–81; gill rakers 9+25 = 34; anal-fin rays 30–31. Adults uniformly black; juveniles with dark blotches and broad bands.

**Distribution.** Type series from off West Papua, Indonesia, ca 100 m depth; adults collected from off southeastern Luzon Island, Philippines, at 760–770 m depth.
**Remarks.** This species was originally described from a type series consisting of three larvae from Indonesia, and the only previously known adult was reported from the Philippines by Ho and Huang (2022). This is a very rare species, with only these four specimens and one additional adult from Myanmar known. This Myanmar specimen represents the first record in the eastern Indian Ocean and suggests that *L. extremus* may have a broader distribution range in the Indo-west Pacific region than has been suspected.

**Discussion**

Ege (1953) included four species in his *Lestidium indopacificum-mirabilis* group, including *L. indopacificum, L. atlanticum, L. mirabilis*, and *L. extremum*. He (Ege 1953: 139) distinguished these four nominal species by the proportions of the predorsal, prepelvic, and preanal (measured from tip of snout to anus) lengths, and by the length to the origin of the anal fin (= preanal length herein). He also showed, however, that three of them have similar counts of prehaemal vertebrae, total vertebrae, and anal-fin rays (Ege 1953: 140, no data available for *L. extremum*). The present examination of adults of all three species shows that these length proportions change with growth and become quite similar, even overlapping, as the more slender body shape of adults is attained. Apart from *Lestidium atlanticum*, which remains in that genus, the other three species were later reassigned to *Lestidiops* and are currently in the *L. mirabilis* species complex (Rofen 1966; Post 1972; this study). The differences between the adults of these three species can now be presented and are based both on the present observations and data from the literature.

The snout is quite slender in *L. indopacificus*, moderate in *L. mirabilis*, and rather stout in *L. extremus*. The VFO is slightly but clearly behind the dorsal-fin base in *L. extremus*, whereas it is under the dorsal-fin base in *L. indopacificus* and *L. mirabilis* (Ho and Huang 2022; this study). In *L. extremus*, the posterior end of the maxilla extends nearly to a vertical drawn through the anterior margin of eye, whereas in the two other species, the maxilla only reaches a point well before the eye.

There are 10 dorsal-fin rays in all three species, except that Harry (1953a) counted nine in a specimen of *L. mirabilis*. There are 28 or 29 (29‒31 in Ege 1953) anal-fin rays in *L. mirabilis*, 30 in *L. indopacificus*, and 30 or 31 in *L. extremum*. Examination of more adult specimens may reveal overlapping or coincident ranges of counts for these features.

Total gill raker counts for *L. mirabilis* are 44 (Atlantic specimen) or 53‒61 (Indo-Pacific specimens) versus 34 total gill rakers in two adults of *L. extremus* and 42–44 in two adults of *L. indopacificus*. The gill rakers are quite closely spaced in *L. mirabilis*, widely spaced in *L. extremus*, and intermediate in *L. indopacificus*. On each gill raker there are usually three or four closely spaced teeth, which are quite long in *L. extremus*, only moderately so in *L. mirabilis*, and short in *L. indopacificus*.

Comparison of the proportional measurements of all three species in the *L. mirabilis* species complex (Table 1) shows that the head is smaller in *L. extremus* compared to the other two species. In addition, the predorsal length is small, and the prepelvic
length larger, in *L. extremus*. While the distance between VFO and AFO (V‒A) is clearly smaller in this species than in the other two, the distance between DFO and AFO (D‒A) is large. The snout and both jaws are also shorter in *L. extremus* than in the other two species, and the pre-nostril length is smallest in *L. extremus* and longest in *L. indopacificus*, as reflected by the different positions of the nostrils in these species.

As for meristic values (Table 2), *L. indopacificus* has some clearly low vertebral counts (PHV 34–35, PVV 33–34, and PAV 47–48) compared to the other two species, and the latter two counts are consistent with the relatively low lateral-line scale counts (PVLL 33–34, PALL 47–48), which also readily separate *L. indopacificus* from the other two species. *Lestidiops extremus* has the lowest caudal vertebra count (CV 39–40), which clearly separates it from the other two species, and *L. mirabilis* has more PDV (35–38) and PDLL (36–39) than the other two species. Finally, *L. mirabilis* has a higher total count of lateral line scales (TLL 73–85) versus *L. indopacificus* (66–70) and *L. extremus* (68–71).

It is notable that both adult specimens of *L. indopacificus* have their nostrils directly above the posterior end of the maxilla, which is different from the two other species (with nostrils situated well before the end of the maxilla), as well as from most other species of *Lestidiops*, although information on this is lacking for some species (Harry 1953a). The more posterior nostril position of *L. indopacificus* is reminiscent of *Stemonosudis*, which was defined by Harry (1953a) as having the laterally positioned nostrils distinctly behind the posterior ends of the maxillae but later revised by Rofen (1966) to “nostrils varying in position from before to slightly behind a vertical from posterior tip of maxilla.” Ho et al. (2019b) found that members of the *S. rothschildi* species complex also have their nostrils situated above or clearly before the posterior ends of the maxillae. More investigation is needed to fully delineate the taxonomic boundary between *Lestidiops* and *Stemonosudis*.

**Acknowledgements**

This study was supported by the National Museum of Marine Biology and Aquarium, Taiwan, the National Kaohsiung University of Science and Technology, Taiwan, and the Australian Museum, Sydney. Thanks go to P. Psomadakis (FAO) for collecting specimens and curatorial teams at AMS, NSMT, BSKU, SAIAB, and ZMUC. English and stylistic review of an earlier draft of the manuscript were provided by Dr Mark J. Grygier, NMMBA. We also thank A. Steward for critically reviewing the manuscript.

**References**


A new Neotropical ant species of genus Linepithema Mayr (Hymenoptera, Formicidae, Dolichoderinae) with partial revision of the L. fuscum group based on males

Stefano Cantone¹,², Andrea Di Giulio¹,²

¹ Department of Science, University 'Roma Tre', Viale G. Marconi, 446, 00146 Rome, Italy ² NBFC, National Biodiversity Future Center, Palermo 90133, Italy

Corresponding author: Andrea Di Giulio (andrea.digiulio@uniroma3.it)

Academic editor: Jeffrey Sosa-Calvo | Received 27 September 2022 | Accepted 30 March 2023 | Published 9 May 2023

Abstract

The genus Linepithema was erected by Mayr (1866) for his male-based species L. fuscum. In this study a new species is described also based on male morphology, L. paulistana sp. nov., collected in the city of São Paulo, Brazil, which is attributed to the fuscum group (Formicidae: Dolichoderinae). Linepithema paulistana sp. nov. is the only species of fuscum group present in the eastern part of South America. It is easily distinguishable from the other species of the group because of the presence of a triangular volsellar tooth, which is distally situated between the digitus and the basivolsellar process. By using SEM and optical microscopy, the external genitalia of L. paulistana sp. nov. were analyzed and illustrated and some characters and previous interpretations have been re-evaluated in the Linepithema fuscum group. The male external genitalia are also comparatively analyzed in three species representative of the three Linepithema species groups, those of fuscum, humile, and neotropicum. The present work confirms that the morphological characters of male ants, especially those of male external genitalia, are effective for the identification of genera or species. Given the discrete morphological differences between the external genitalia of the fuscum group and the other species of this genus, a re-evaluation of the generic status of Linepithema is suggested.

Keywords

External genitalia, Linepithema paulistana, male ants, taxonomic status, winged ants
Introduction

The Neotropical ant genus *Linepithema* Mayr, 1866 (Formicidae: Dolichoderinae) includes 20 species that are widely distributed in Central and South America and the Caribbean (Wild 2007; Bolton 2022). Workers of this genus are monomorphic, and the males and queens are winged. The best known and most studied species is the invasive Argentine ant *L. humile* Mayr, 1868, which shows a cosmopolitan distribution due to its ability to adapt to different climatic conditions and to the plasticity of its reproductive strategies (Ward 1987; Aron et al. 1994, 2001; Aron 2001; Roura-Pascual et al. 2004; Menke and Holway 2006). The genus was erected based on males collected in Lima, Peru, which was described as *Linepithema fuscum* Mayr, 1866. Shattuck (1992a) subdivided the dolichoderine genus *Iridomyrmex* Mayr, 1862, transferring the Neotropical species to *Linepithema*, including *L. humile*, based on the examination of workers associated with males. In his generic review of Dolichoderinae, Shattuck (1992b) provided a diagnosis of *Linepithema* for the worker, queen, male, and the larval stage, and divided the genus into two male-based species groups, those of *fuscum* and *humile*.

*Linepithema* was later revised by Wild (2007), who followed Shattuck’s species-group classification and suggested that the *fuscum* group may be monophyletic, and the *humile* group may be paraphyletic, as it lacks distinct synapomorphies. Subsequently, Wild (2009), confirmed the monophyly of the *fuscum* group via molecular phylogenetics, and subdivided the *humile* group into three species groups: *humile* group, *iniquum* group, and *neotropicum* group. Unfortunately, *L. fuscum* could not be included in this phylogenetic analysis. According to Wild (2007, 2009), the *fuscum* group includes seven species, two of which, *L. cryptobioticum* Wild, 2007 and *L. flavescens* Wheeler & Mann, 1914, have unknown males. The highly distinctive characters of the males of the *Linepithema fuscum* group, compared to the other species groups, have been highlighted by both Shattuck (1992b) and Wild (2007), and mainly refer to: i) the submarginal cells of the forewings; ii) the ventral petiolar process; iii) the pygostyle; and iv) the paramere and volsella, which are parts of the external genitalia. Notably, the female castes of *L. fuscum* remain unknown, with the intersex association based solely on geography (Wild 2007), and no COI DNA barcode analysis was performed (Wild 2009).

In the present study we describe a new species of *Linepithema*, collected in the city of São Paulo (Brazil), based on males. Due to its genitalic form, we attribute the species to the *fuscum* group. The morphology of the new species is described by using optical and scanning electron (SEM) microscopy; these are the first SEM illustrations of a *fuscum* group male and include figures of the external genitalia. The male genitalia are compared to three species, representing three of the four species groups (*fuscum*, *humile*, and *neotropicum*). The morphological interpretation and terminology used for external genitalia in previous *Linepithema* descriptions is revised. Finally, an updated key to males of the species *Linepithema* in the *fuscum* group is presented, and a new species distribution map of the *Linepithema fuscum* group is supplied.
Materials and methods

Material examined

Males of *Linepithema paulistana* sp. nov., *L. humile*, and *L. neotropicum* Wild, 2007 were captured in São Paulo city (Brazil), 23°35’16”S, 46°38’55”W, altitude 800 m a.s.l. via two light traps (“Luiz de Queiroz” model), equipped with 15-watt UV black-blue lamps. The traps were left in the same position, attached to the same tree at 3 m and 7 m from the ground, kept active continuously from 01 August 2012 to 01 September 2014 and checked weekly (Cantone 2018b), with the specimens preserved in 70% ethanol. We identified the specimens using the works of Mayr (1866), Emery (1912), Shattuck (1992b), and Wild (2004, 2007). We had the following material at our disposal: *Linepithema paulistana* sp. nov. (*fuscum* group), 12 male specimens collected from March to August 2013, and in January, February, and June 2014; *L. humile* (*humile* group), ten male specimens collected in April 2012, September to December 2013, and March 2014; and *L. neotropicum* (*neotropicum* group), 20 male specimens collected in the months of October to December 2012, January to April 2013 and July to December 2013. The holotype (MZUR3-HF0001) and seven paratypes (unique ID codes MZUR3-HF0002 to MZUR3-HF0008) of *L. paulistana* sp. nov., and specimens of *L. humile* and *L. neotropicum* are deposited in the Museum of Zoology of ‘Roma Tre’ University (Rome, Italy; MZUR3); two paratype males (MZUR3-HF0009 and MZUR3-HF0010) will be deposited in the Museum of Zoology of São Paulo University (MZUSP).

Morphological analysis

The identifications and dissections were performed with Leica MZ12 (Leica Microsystems, Wetzlar, Germany) and Olympus SZX16 (Olympus, Tokyo, Japan) stereomicroscopes equipped respectively with Olympus Highlight 2100 and Olympus KL1500 LCD fiber optic lights. Dissected specimens were mounted on slides in Canada balsam and examined with an Olympus BX51 (Olympus, Tokyo, Japan) microscope. Optical micrographs of slide mounted specimens were taken with an Olympus BX51 microscope equipped with an om-d e-m5 digital camera (Olympus, Tokyo, Japan) with either a 10 × or 20 × objective. Remaining pictures of holotype were acquired with a Zeiss Axio Zoom V16 (Carl Zeiss AG; Oberkochen, Germany) and an Axiocam 503 (Carl Zeiss Microimaging GmbH, Jena, Germany) equipped with Led dual spot-lights Photonic Optische (Vienna, Austria). Scanning electron microscopy was performed at L.I.M.E. lab (University of Roma Tre, Rome, Italy). Samples were dehydrated in a graded ethanol series (70%, 85%, 95%, 30 min each followed by 100% for 2 h), critical point dried (Balzer Union CPD 030 unit), mounted on aluminum stubs with a conductive adhesive carbon disk, sputtered with a thin layer (30 nm) of gold in a Emithech K550 sputter coater (Emitech, Kent, UK), and analyzed with a Zeiss Gemini 300 field emission SEM microscope at a voltage of 5 kV (Carl Zeiss AG, Jena, Germany).

The terminology used in this study represents a combination between classical studies on Hymenoptera and more specific studies on Formicidae and it based on
Snodgrass (1941) for the external genitalia; Mason (1986) for the wing venation; Schulmeister (2001, 2003) for the external genitalia; Yoshimura and Fisher (2007, 2009, 2011) for the male general morphology and wing venation; Perfilieva (2010) for the wing venation; Boudinot (2013, 2015, 2018) for the external genitalia and mesosoma; Barden et al. (2017) for the external genitalia; Cantone (2017, 2018a) and Cantone and Von Zuben (2019) for the wing venation; Delsine et al. (2019) for the general morphology of Formicidae; Beutel et al. (2020) for the legs; Richter et al. (2019, 2020, 2021) for the head. When conflicting terminology was found, we prioritized the most recent reference studies applied to the family Formicidae.

Measurements

In order to make comparisons with the other species of the genus *Linepithema*, measurements of *L. paulistana* sp. nov. follow the system of Wild (2007). We provided all measurements for the holotype and the morphometric variation (minimum and maximum) based on ten specimens (holotype and nine paratypes). In Table 1 we compared these measurements with those of all species of the *fuscum* group with known males.

**Table 1.** The most relevant morphological characters that differentiate the males of the *Linepithema fuscum* group from the males of the other *Linepithema* species. This table is based on the comparative tables by Shattuck (1992b) and Wild (2007). The new or re-evaluated diagnostic characters of the *fuscum* group resulting from this study are indicated in bold.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Morphological characters</th>
<th>Male <em>Linepithema fuscum</em> group</th>
<th>Male <em>Linepithema</em>, other species</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ventral petiolar process</td>
<td>slightly developed (Figs 1D, 3D)</td>
<td>well developed (Fig. 5A, B)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forewings</td>
<td>two submarginal cells (Fig. 1E)</td>
<td>one submarginal cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proctiger</td>
<td>well developed (Fig. 4A–C)</td>
<td>slightly developed (Fig. 5C–D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pygostyles</td>
<td>very long (Fig. 4A)</td>
<td>short (Fig. 5C)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basimere</td>
<td>strongly thinned dorsally and shortened distally (Fig. 4C, F)</td>
<td>developed dorsally and distally (Fig. 5C, D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>telomere</td>
<td>narrow and very long, ribbon-like, digitiform distally (Fig. 4A–C)</td>
<td>short and lobe form (Fig. 5C, D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basivolsellar process</td>
<td>reduced (Fig. 4C, D)</td>
<td>developed (Fig. 5E, F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>digitus</td>
<td>dorsal and very long (Fig. 4B)</td>
<td>medial and short (Fig. 5C, D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuspis</td>
<td>lateral and very reduced (Fig. 4D)</td>
<td>lateral and developed (Fig. 5C, D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>valviceps lamina</td>
<td>dentate ventral edge straight (Fig. 1J)</td>
<td>dentate ventral edge strongly convex and rounded (Fig. 5G, H)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Abbreviations for morphological characters**

**HL**  Head length, in full face view. The midline distance from the level of the maximum posterior projection of the margin of the head (not including the ocelli) to the level of the most anterior projection of the anterior clypeal margin.

**HW**  Head width, in full face view, the maximum width of the head posterior to the compound eyes.
Linepithema paulistana, new ant species from the city of São Paulo

MOD  Median ocellus diameter.
SL   Antennal scape length, measured from the apex of the first antennal segment to the base, excluding the radicle.
FL   Profemur length, in posterior view, measured along the longitudinal axis from the apex to the junction with the trochanter.
LHF  Metafemur length.
LHT  Metatibial length, in dorsal view, measured along the longitudinal axis from the apex to the level of the lateral condyles, excluding the medial proximal condyle.
LHTa Metabasitarsus length.
EL   Eye length, in full face view, the length of the compound eye along the longitudinal axis.
EW   Eye width, with eye held in focal plane facing the viewer, the maximum transverse width of the compound eye.
MML  Maximum mesosomal length, the distance from the maximum anterior projection of the mesosoma to the maximum posterior projection of the propodeum.
WL   Forewing length, the maximum distance between the insertion of the sclerotized wing veins to the distal margin of the wing.
WHL  Hindwing length, the maximum distance between the insertion of the sclerotized wing veins to the distal margin of the wing.
ES   Eye size index. $100 \times EL \times EW$
CI   Cephalic index. $100 \times HW/HL$
SI   Scape index. $100 \times SL/HL$
OI   Ocular index. $100 \times EL/HL$
WI   Wing index. $10 \times WL/MML$
FI   Femoral index. $100 \times FL/MML$

Results

Class Insecta Linnaeus, 1758
Order Hymenoptera Linnaeus, 1758
Family Formicidae Latreille, 1809
Subfamily Dolichoderinae, Forel, 1878
Genus Linepithema Mayr, 1866

Linepithema paulistana sp. nov.
https://zoobank.org/48DC08BF-0E4B-4946-9142-F26224830832
Figs 1–6

Paratypes: Same data as holotype, 10 specimens deposited in the Museum of Zoology of the Roma Tre University (Rome, Italy), MZUR3-HF0002 to MZUR3-HF0008.
Holotype male description. **Measurements (in mm):**

- HL: 0.70
- HW: 0.65
- MOD: 0.15
- SL: 0.19
- FL: 1.10
- LHT: 1.11
- LHF: 1.36
- LHTa: 1.1
- EL: 0.35
- EW: 0.25
- MML: 1.56
- WL: 4.05
- WHL: 3.28

**Indices:**

- ES: 8.75
- CI: 92.9
- SI: 27.1
- OI: 50.0
- WI: 26.0
- FI: 70.5

**Male diagnosis:**

- notauli absent
- forewing with two submarginal cells, marginal cell closed
- petiole without ventral process
- proctiger well developed
- telomere narrow and elongated, digitiform distally
- digitus dorsally long, spine-like distally
- basivolsellar process reduced ventrally
- volsellar tooth present distally between digitus and basivolsellar process
- cuspis laterally very reduced

**Habitus** (Fig. 1A):

- slender ant, with metasoma elongated, longer than mesosoma
- Dense pubescence present throughout the body, with sparse elongate, erected setae on head and mesosoma
- Color of head and body medium brown; antennae and legs yellowish

**Head** (Figs 1B, C, 2A–G):

- longer than broad in full face view
- eyes relatively large, occupying much of the anterolateral side of the head
- separated from the insertion of the mandibles by a distance less than 1/3 than the length of the antennal scape
- Two very long erect setae posterior to the median ocellus
- Antennae filiform with 13 articles, regularly tapering to the apex
- scape short, ~ 1/2 the length of the second funicular article
- first article of the funiculus very short and cylindrical
- barrel shaped, ~ 1/3 the length of the second
- second funicular article longest
- articles of funiculus 9–12 short
- antennal condylar bulb with series of spiniform Böhmsella, scape and first article of funiculus with recumbent sensilla
- articles of funiculus 2–12 with erected sensilla
- Anterior clypeal margin convex medially, with erect setae
- medial part of the clypeus with two long erect setae
- Labrum small, bilobed, separated by a deep notch
- each lobe laterally reduced and pointed and medially produced into a round plate dorsally with multiple setae
- Epipharynx unsclerotized, exceeding the length of labrum and distinctly visible in dorsal view
- Mandibles large, with masticatory margin long and broad
- apical tooth long and pointed
- preapical tooth short and subtriangular
- basal margin short and strongly diverging
- basal part of the mandible covered by dense pubescence on dorsal and lateral surface
- masticatory margin without pubescence, with very long setae (6 or 7 dorsally and 9–11 ventrally)
- Maxillae with subrectangular stripes, pubescent dorso-laterally and not setose ventrally
- Maxillary palps with six articles, together with a total length that exceeds half the length of head
- article I very short, II subequal in length and diameter to III; IV subequal in length and minor in diameter to III; V and VI thin and short
- Dorsal surface of galea not pubescent, with short, scattered setae basally, long setae laterally and distally
- ental margin of galea with maxillary comb medi ally projected
- Lacinia comb composed of teeth alternating with stout setae
- Labium with prementum subrectangular and elongate
- wider and with two very long setae ventrally
- postmentum with spinulate microsculpture
- glossa with comb-like, backward directed fringes
- labial palps of four articles: article I subequal in length to II; III and IV shorter and thinner than II

**Mesosoma** (Figs 1A, D–F, 3A–D, F, G):

- shorter in length than metasoma
- Pronotum short, with recumbent pubescence, laterally projecting over the
Figure 1. *L. paulistana* sp. nov.: A habitus B head in dorsal view C head in lateral view D petiole in lateral view E forewing F hindwing G external genitalia in lateral view H abdominal sternite IX I tergite IX+proctiger J valviceps lamina. Abbreviations: A: anal vein; atIX: abdominal tergite IX; asIX: abdominal sternite IX; BA: basal cell; CS: costal cell; Cu: cubital vein; cu-a: cubito-anal crossvein; DSC: discoidal cell; MA: marginal cell; M+Cu: medio-cubital vein; plc: petiole ventral postero-lateral carina; pg: pygostyle; pr: proctiger; Rs1: radial sector 1 vein; Rs2: radial sector 2 vein; rs-m+M1: radial sector-media crossveins; rs-m: radial sector-media cross-vein; 2r-rs: 2 radius-radial sector crossvein; R1: Radius 1; Rs1: Radial sector 1; Rs2: Radial sector 2; SBA: subbasal cell; SM1: submarginal 1 cell; SM2: submarginal cell 2; te: telomere; vc: valviceps; vo: volsella; vt: volsellar tooth.
anepisternum. Mesoscutum strongly convex in lateral view, not overhanging the pronotum, totally covered by recumbent pubescence; notauli absent; parapsidal lines evident. Mesoscutellum swelling, separated from mesoscutum by a deep scutoscutellar sulcus, smooth dorsally and with recumbent pubescence laterally. Metascutellum convex, lower than mesoscutellum and not overlapping with the propodeum, with recumbent pubescence and long setae dorsomedially. Metapleural gland orifice very large and posterolateral. Forewings (WL: 4.05; WI: 25.95) with two submarginal cells, discoidal cell, marginal cell closed and large, dark pterostigma, two radius-radial sector cross-vein almost in line with radial sector-media, two media vein present; tegula with row of small hairs. Hindwings (WHL: 3.27)
without two medial vein; one radius vein nebulous and one radial sector present but short; 8–11 hamuli. Legs (FI: 70.5); profemur (FL: 1.10); metafemur (LHF: 1.36); metatibia (LHT: 1.11) with single apical very long spur pectinate on the in-
ner margin and with small cuticular fringes on the external margin; metabasitarsus long (LHTa: 1.09); mesotibia with short apical spur pectinate; pretarsal claw simple with arolium and planta developed. Propodeum in lateral view slightly convex dorsally and straight posteriorly; propodeal spiracle orifice lateral and rounded. Sternal region as in Fig. 3B.
**Linepithema paulistana**, new ant species from the city of São Paulo

**Metasoma** (Figs 1A, D, 3D): Petiole erect, taller than wide in lateral view and rounded dorsally, anterior profile convex and posterior concave; setae and pubescence present in the anterior face, posterior face without setae or pubescence; petiolar tergosternal suture with small posterior lobe; ventral profile of petiole only slightly convex, without subpetiolar process, with long setae anteriorly and erect setae posteriorly; petiole articulated ventrally with abdominal segment III. Gaster elongate, with dense pubescence on tergites and sternites, hairs of pubescence longer on last sternites where long setae are also present laterally; pygostyles very long and apical erected setae; proc-tiger well developed, extending posteriorly beyond the IX abdominal tergite in the form of a large lamina, straight distally and light colored.

**External genitalia** (Figs 1G–J, 4A–F): IX abdominal sternite bilobed distally, due to a deep medial notch. Paramere composed of a short basimere, dish-like, strongly thinned dorsally, and shortened distally, and telomere narrow and very long ribbon-like, digitiform distally, that extends postero-dorsally overcoming the proctiger. Volsella composed of i) parossiculus (basivolsella+cuspis) with small and pointed ventral basivolsellar process and with apical and ventral setae along the edge; lateral cuspid very reduced to a ridge, bearing long setae on apical part; ii) very long falcate dorsal digitus, downturned, distally spine-like; iii) triangular volsellar tooth posteromedially placed, between basivolsellar process and digitus, without setae. Penis valve very long with valvicesps lamina ventrally straight and multidentate with 13 or 14 teeth, apically rounded.

**Remarks.** Queen and worker unknown. Currently only known from São Paulo city, Brazil. Mating flight January to August.

**Derivatio nominis.** The name paulistana refers to the Brazilian appellation of the citizens of São Paulo city, where several males of the new species were captured.

**Description of the male external genitalia of Linepithema humile (humile group) and L. neotropicum (neotropicum group)**

External genitalia (Fig. 5A–F). The two species *L. humile* and *L. neotropicum* show a similar structure of the following features: IX abdominal sternite distally concave medially; paramere composed of a short dish-like basimere, which extends dorsally, and a distally lobate telomere; volsella composed of: i) parossiculus (basivolsella+cuspis) with posteroventral basivolsellar process developed, lobate, with long setae along its margin and lateral cuspid developed, with apical setae; ii) median falcate digitus, downturned, distally spine-like and slightly longer than the telomere; penisvalve with valvicesps lamina ventrally strongly convex, rounded and multidentate with 16 or 17 teeth in *L. humile* and 13 teeth in *L. neotropicum*. The two species are clearly distinguished by the shape of the valvicesps lamina and for structure of the volsella, that in *L. neotropicum* is characterized by having a lateral cuspid lobate apically and parallel to the median digitus; instead in *L. humile* the lateral cuspid is slightly pointed apically and more ventral than the digitus.
In Table 1 we report an updated and comparative list of the most relevant diagnostic characters that differentiate the males of the *Linepithema fuscum* group from the males of the other species of the same genus.

**Figure S.** *L. humile* **A** petiole in lateral view **C** external genitalia in lateral view **E** external genitalia in posterior view **G** valviceps lamina. *L. neotropicum* **B** petiole in lateral view **D** external genitalia in lateral view **F** external genitalia in posterior view **H** valviceps lamina. Abbreviations: ba: basimere; bvp: basivolsellar process; cu: cuspis; dg: digitus; mgo: metapleural gland orifice; ps: petiole spiracle; prs: propodeal spiracle; pl: ventral petiolar process; pm: penisvalve membrane; te: telomere; vc: valviceps lamina.
Morphometrics

See Table 2.

Table 2. Most relevant morphometric male characters of *L. paulistana* sp. nov. and species of the *Linepithema fuscum*-group. The measurements of *L. angulatum*, *L. fuscum*, *L. keiteli*, *L. piliferum*, and *L. tsachila* are taken from Wild (2007). Abbreviations are listed in Materials and methods and follow the system of Wild (2007).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th><em>L. paulistana</em> sp. nov. (n = 10)</th>
<th><em>L. angulatum</em> (n = 4)</th>
<th><em>L. fuscum</em> (n = 5)</th>
<th><em>L. keiteli</em> (n = 4)</th>
<th><em>L. piliferum</em> (n = 5)</th>
<th><em>L. tsachila</em> (n = 4)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HL</td>
<td>0.67–0.71</td>
<td>0.68–0.74</td>
<td>0.61–0.70</td>
<td>0.66–0.71</td>
<td>0.71–0.74</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HW</td>
<td>0.64–0.67</td>
<td>0.63–0.70</td>
<td>0.56–0.65</td>
<td>0.63–0.78</td>
<td>0.69–0.71</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SL</td>
<td>0.19–0.20</td>
<td>0.19–0.21</td>
<td>0.21–0.22</td>
<td>0.23–0.24</td>
<td>0.21–0.24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FL</td>
<td>1.07–1.11</td>
<td>1.01–1.07</td>
<td>0.88–1.06</td>
<td>0.91–1.03</td>
<td>1.10–1.15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LHT</td>
<td>1.06–1.12</td>
<td>1.01–1.07</td>
<td>0.85–1.10</td>
<td>0.90–1.02</td>
<td>1.09–1.13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EL</td>
<td>0.33–0.37</td>
<td>0.32–0.37</td>
<td>0.24–0.28</td>
<td>0.34–0.37</td>
<td>0.39–0.45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MML</td>
<td>1.46–1.58</td>
<td>1.48–1.67</td>
<td>1.31–1.61</td>
<td>1.44–1.57</td>
<td>1.53–1.62</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CI</td>
<td>88–93</td>
<td>92–95</td>
<td>85–98</td>
<td>90–97</td>
<td>93–97</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FI</td>
<td>66–69</td>
<td>70–73</td>
<td>66–68</td>
<td>61–66</td>
<td>70–71</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Geographic distribution

The species of the *fuscum* group are geographically distributed as follows: *L. angulatum* Emery, 1894, in Costa Rica south, west South America to the Brazilian Pantanal; *L. fuscum* Mayr, 1866, in Peru and Ecuador; *L. keiteli* Forel, 1906, in Hispaniola;

Figure 6. Distribution map of the *Linepithema fuscum* group of species in Central and South America.
L. piliferum Mayr, 1870, in mountains of northwestern South America to Costa Rica; L. tsachila Wild, 2007, in Colombia and Ecuador; L. cryptobioticum Wild, 2007, Paraguay; L. flavescens Wheeler & Mann, 1914, Hispaniola (Wild 2007; Escarga and Guerrero 2016); and L. paulistana sp. nov. São Paulo, Brazil (Fig. 6).

Key

A dichotomous key to identify the males of known species of the fuscum group is presented. The form of the volsella in the species of Linepithema fuscum group is the main morphological feature used by Wild (2007) to differentiate the species. The digitus was divided by Wild (2007) into proximal arm and distal arm (Fig. 7D). We follow this criterion, which gives the possibility to compare this new species with the other described species of the fuscum group (Fig. 7). In L. paulistana sp. nov. the distal arm is similar in length to the proximal arm.

Figure 7. Shape of volsella in males of the Linepithema Fuscum-group A L. paulistana sp. nov. B L. angulatum C L. piliferum D L. fuscum E L. keiteli F L. tsachila. Abbreviations: dp = proximal arm of digitus; dd = distal arm of digitus. B–F re-drawn from Wild (2007).

1 Forewings with one submarginal cell; petiole with ventral process well developed (Fig. 5A, B); pygostyle short (Fig. 5C); proctiger slightly developed (Fig. 5E, F); telomere short and lobiform (Fig. 5C, D); lateral cuspis developed (Fig. 5E, F); ventral basivolsellar process developed (Fig. 5E, F).................................

..............................................Linepithema species not in the fuscum group
– Forewings with two submarginal cells (Fig. 1E); petiole with ventral process slightly developed consisting of a slight convexity (Figs 1D, 3D); pygostyle very
Linepithema paulistana, new ant species from the city of São Paulo

Discussion

The genus Linepithema was designated by Mayr (1866) for males that he described as L. fuscum, for which workers and queens remain unknown. Regardless, males of the fuscum group are easily distinguished from other Linepithema species due to the synapomorphic features indicated by Shattuck (1992b) and Wild (2007). We report these features in Table 1 together with new or updated characters, while in Table 2 we report the male morphometrics for all species of the L. fuscum group with the addition of our proposed new species. Currently, males of the L. fuscum group are known for five out of seven species and are recognizable by the peculiar morphology of the volsella (digitus and basivolsellar process, Fig. 6), which was used as the main species-specific feature by Wild (2007) in his dichotomous key to males. Linepithema paulistana sp. nov. shows all diagnostic features of fuscum group and is distinguished from the other species by the presence of a triangular tooth situated on the volsella distally, between digitus and basivolsellar process (Figs 1G, 4A–F). For this reason, in the present description of L. paulistana sp. nov. we emphasized the morphology of the external genitalia (in particular of the volsella).

The first description of the external genitalia in L. fuscum was made by Mayr (1866), later revised by Emery (1912), who supplied a new description of all the three paired valves, figured by a schematic drawing. Subsequently, the external genitalia of the genus Linepithema fuscum group have been described by Shattuck (1992b) and Wild (2007). According to careful studies of several authors, the volsella is composed of two separate sclerites: the lateroventral parossiculus and the medial digitus (Snodgrass 1941); both sclerites are united longitudinally by a narrow, sclerotized suture (Schulmeister 2001); the parossiculus is a unique sclerite (Schulmeister 2001), consisting in a basal basivolsella, a ventral basivolsellar process and a lateral cuspis (Snodgrass 1941). The distal apex of the cuspis and the ventral and apical basivolsellar process are usually recognizable by the presence of setae (Boudinot 2013). By using SEM and optical microscopy
we analyzed the external genitalia of *L. paulistana* sp. nov. and re-evaluated some characters and previous interpretations in the *Linepithema fuscum* group.

In *L. paulistana* sp. nov. we found that: i) the cuspis is very reduced but clearly recognizable as a ridge by the presence of long setae on apical part (Fig. 4C–E), probably due to a lateromedial flattening of the volsella, and not absent as claimed by Shattuck (1992b) and Wild (2007) in the diagnosis of the *fuscum* group. In our opinion, the presence of the cuspis in males of other species of the *fuscum* group should be reconsidered. ii) The “ventrodistal process” of the volsella described by Wild (2007) is the basivolsellar process, which is reduced and with apical and ventral setae (Fig. 4A–F).

The *L. fuscum* group is, to our knowledge, an exception in the subfamily Dolichoderinae: the paramere shows a telomere very elongated, narrow, ribbon-like and digitiform apically, extending anterodorsally up the proctiger (Fig. 4A–C). Otherwise, the external genitalia of the subfamily Dolichoderinae, based on the diagnosis by Boudinot (2015), is characterized by a paramere, with basimere dorsally and distally developed, and a telomere strongly reduced and lobed, representing a synapomorphy of the subfamily (Yoshimura and Fisher 2011; Boudinot 2015). As for the paramere (basimere+telomere), in the males of the *fuscum* group, including *L. paulistana* sp. nov., the term telomere should be preferred to gonostylus, utilized in the previous descriptions (Shattuck 1992b), consistently with the same lobate structures of other dolichoderine males, as suggested by Boudinot (2013).

In order to show the morphological diversity of the male external genitalia within the *Linepithema* species-groups, we also analyzed and illustrated by SEM the species *L. humile* (representative of the *humile* group) and *L. neotropicum* (representative of the *neotropicum* group), and we compared these species with *L. paulistana* sp. nov. (representative of the *fuscum* group). We highlighted, in particular, that: i) in *L. humile* and *L. neotropicum* the basivolsellar process is well developed, located ventrally, with lateral cuspis and medial digitus (Fig. 5C–F). In males of the *fuscum* group, due to elongation and flattening lateromedially of the volsella, the cuspis is reduced laterally to the digitus and the basivolsellar process is reduced ventrally (Fig. 4A–F). ii) The morphology of the dentate valviceps lamina in *L. humile* and *L. neotropicum* has a rounded profile dentate ventral edge strongly convex and rounded, while in *L. paulistana* sp. nov. has a dentate ventral edge straight (Figs 1J, 4D, 5G, H). iii) The proctiger in *L. paulistana* sp. nov. is well developed (Figs 1G, I, 4A, C), probably representing a morphological character of the *fuscum* group, given that in *L. tsachila* and *L. fuscum* is present (AntWeb 2022). The proctiger is very reduced in the males of the other *Linepithema* species-groups (Fig. 5C, D). Relevant morphological characters that distinguish the species of the *Linepithema fuscum* group from the other species of the same genus are reported in Table 1.

Concerning the morphometric characters reported in Table 2, *L. paulistana* sp. nov. shows several similarities with *L. fuscum*, but differs in having smaller head (CI), much smaller wings (WL), and longer profemora (FL). However, the possibility that *L. paulistana* sp. nov. could represent an allopatric population of *L. fuscum*, with some morphological differences, seems highly unlikely due to: i) different morphology and dimensions of the volsella, an acknowledged species-specific character; ii) the great geographic distance between the species, *L. fuscum* from the Pacific side and *L. paulistana*
Linepithema paulistana, new ant species from the city of São Paulo

sp. nov. from of the Atlantic side, separated by the Andes Mountains; iii) the different climatic and ecological conditions where the two species live.

As the *fuscum* group is male-based, the assignment of the species to this group should be verified by using male characters. However, based on worker morphology (Wild 2007), two species of *Linepithema* with unknown males, *L. flavescens* and *L. cryptobioticum*, were assigned to the *fuscum* group (Wild 2007). For *L. cryptobioticum* this assignment was supported by a molecular study (Wild 2009). Since the workers of the new species here described are still unknown, we cannot exclude *a priori* the possibility that males of *L. paulistana* sp. nov. could be part of the aforementioned species. However, this is unlikely based on the following arguments: 1) The species *L. cryptobioticum*, *L. flavescens* and *L. paulistana* sp. nov. have allopatric distribution: *L. flavescens* is very far from the other species and shows very localized distribution in the Northern hemisphere, being only present in the Hispaniola Island; *L. cryptobioticum* is only present in Paraguay; *L. paulistana* sp. nov. is only present in São Paulo city. 2) The species *L. cryptobioticum* was included in the molecular phylogeny of Wild (2009) and was found to be a daughter species of *L. angulatum*. For this reason, we hypothesize that male of *L. cryptobioticum* is morphologically very similar to that of *L. angulatum*. Comparing the males of *L. angulatum* and *L. paulistana* sp. nov. we find the following distinctive differences that widely reduce the possibility of a close relationship between the two species: the volsella is very different in shape (Fig. 7A, B) and the morphometric dimensions are very different (see for example HL, HW, FL, MML, OI in Table 2). However, we cannot exclude that *L. paulistana* sp. nov. is a derived offshoot within the “*angulatum*” cluster. For these reasons, in order to have more clarity about the relationships in this intricate species group, we will have to wait until the discovery of males of *L. cryptobioticum*, as well as *L. angulatum* males from other representative localities within the wide range of distribution, spanning from Meso-America to the Pantanal.

Finally, it is remarkable that *L. paulistana* sp. nov. is the only species of the *fuscum* group present in the eastern part of South America, extending the former distribution of this species group (Fig. 6), widely distributed in western South America. This finding represents an important range expansion of the genus, which opens the possibility to find additional species of *L. fuscum* group also in other parts of eastern South America.

**Conclusions**

The present work confirms that the information on morphological characters of male, especially of male external genitalia, is effective for the identification of ant genera and species, as in most insects (Bolton 2003; Yoshimura and Fisher 2007; Yoshimura and Fisher 2011; Boudinot 2013, 2015; Cantone 2017). We are strongly convinced that a greater knowledge of the male caste would greatly help the identification of most ant species, genera, or species groups, like *Linepithema*, where workers are very difficult to identify at the species level. Unfortunately, in the family Formicidae the knowledge on the male caste is very limited and the taxonomy is traditionally mainly based on workers. *Linepithema* is one of the very rare genera described on male caste and allows
to describe a new species, like *L. paulistana* sp. nov., based on male specimens. In our opinion the great morphological differences between the external genitalia of species of the *fuscum* group and all the other species formerly assigned to the genus *Iridomyrmex*, like *L. humile*, and now included in three different *Linepithema* species groups, suggest that a re-evaluation of the taxonomic status of this genus is urgently needed.

**Acknowledgements**

We thank Alexander L. Wild, author of the great revision of the genus *Linepithema*, Jeffrey Sosa-Calvo, and an anonymous referee who carefully revised the manuscript and greatly improved this paper with their helpful suggestions.

**References**


Linepithema paulistana, new ant species from the city of São Paulo


The complete mitochondrial genome of Aeschrocoris tuberculatus and A. ceylonicus (Hemiptera, Pentatomidae) and its phylogenetic implications

Wang Jia¹, Jiufeng Wei¹, Minmin Niu¹, Hufang Zhang², Qing Zhao¹

¹ College of Plant Protection, Shanxi Agricultural University, Taiyuan 030801, Shanxi, China
² Department of Biology, Xinzhou Teachers University, Xinzhou 034000, Shanxi, China

Corresponding author: Qing Zhao (zhaoqing86623@163.com)

Academic editor: Wenjun Bu | Received 20 January 2023 | Accepted 13 April 2023 | Published 9 May 2023

Citation: Jia W, Wei J, Niu M, Zhang H, Zhao Q (2023) The complete mitochondrial genome of Aeschrocoris tuberculatus and A. ceylonicus (Hemiptera, Pentatomidae) and its phylogenetic implications. ZooKeys 1160: 145–167. https://doi.org/10.3897/zookeys.1160.100818

Abstract

Aeschrocoris tuberculatus and A. ceylonicus (Hemiptera, Pentatomidae, Pentatominae) are mainly distributed in southern China, India, Myanmar, and Sri Lanka. Both species are also common agricultural pests. However, only the morphology of the genus Aeschrocoris has previously been studied, and molecular data have been lacking. In this study, the whole mitochondrial genomes of A. tuberculatus and A. ceylonicus are and annotated. The lengths of the complete mitochondrial genomes of the two species are 16,134 bp and 16,142 bp, respectively, and both contain 37 typical genes, including 13 protein-coding genes (PCGs), two ribosomal RNA genes (rRNAs), 22 transfer RNA genes (tRNAs), and a control region. The mitochondrial genome structure, gene order, nucleotide composition, and codon usage of A. tuberculatus and A. ceylonicus are consistent with those of typical Pentatomidae. Most PCGs of both species use ATN as the start codon, except atp8, nad1, and cox1, which use TTG as the start codon. cox1, cox2, and atp6 use a single T, and nad1 use TAG as the stop codon; the remaining PCGs have TAA as the stop codon. The A+T contents of the two species are 73.86% and 74.08%, respectively. All tRNAs have a typical cloverleaf structure, with the exception of trnS1, which lacks a dihydrouridine arm. The phylogenetic tree is reconstructed using the maximum-likelihood method based on the newly obtained mitochondrial genome sequences and 87 existing mitochondrial genomes of Pentatomoidea from the NCBI database and two species of Lygaeoidea as outgroups. The phylogenetic trees strongly support the following relationships: (Urostylididae + ((Acanthosomatidae + ((Cydnidae + (Dinidoridae + Tessaratomidae)) + (Scutelleridae + Plataspidae))) + Pentatomidae). This study enriches the mitochondrial genome database of Pentatomoidea and provides a reference for further phylogenetic studies.
Keywords
Mitogenome, Pentatomoidea, phylogenetic analysis

Introduction

The insect mitochondrial genome is a circular double-stranded DNA molecule with a length of about 16–18 kb, which code 37 genes: 13 protein-coding genes (PCGs), two ribosomal RNA (rRNA) genes, and 22 transfer RNA (tRNA) genes (Boore 1999). In addition, the mitochondrial genome usually includes a noncoding region of variable length that plays a regulatory role in transcription and replication, known as the mitochondrial control region (Cameron 2014). In recent years, with the development of sequencing technology and the amplification through universal primers for mitochondrial genes (Simon et al. 1994, 2006), the number of insect mitochondrial genomes has rapidly increased, and the characteristics and evolutionary patterns of insect mitochondrial genomes are becoming more and more clear; their applications in phylogenetic studies are gradually increasing. The mitochondrial genome contains important molecular evolutionary information such as base composition and codon usage (Yuan et al. 2022). It has been widely used in research on molecular evolution, phylogeny, genealogy, and population genetic structure because of its stable gene composition, relatively conserved order, matrilineal inheritance, and minimal recombination (Ballard and Whitlock 2004; Simon and Hadrys 2013; Cameron 2014).

Pentatomidae (Hemiptera, Heteroptera, Pentatomomorpha) consists of more than 8,000 species in 18 families, of which Pentatomidae is the largest family containing 940 genera and about 5,000 species (Rider et al. 2018). Pentatomidae is a species-rich group, so it is difficult to propose defining characteristics that can be applied to all groups. All stinkbugs of Pentatomidae are terrestrial insects, most of which are phytophagous; only Asopinae are predatory species, and some are used as biological control agents (De Clercq et al. 2003).

The tribe Aeschrocorini was first proposed by Distant (1902) and included two genera, Aeschrocoris Bergroth, 1887 and Scylax Distant, 1887. It remained little known until Cachan (1952) added a new genus to the tribe. The Aeschrocorini is still relatively small, currently with only eight genera (Rider et al. 2018). Hassan et al. (2016) provided a brief record of Indian species of Aeschrocoris. Despite the complex taxonomic relationships within the Aeschrocorini, numerous scholars have consistently assigned the genus Aeschrocoris to Aeschrocorini (Rider et al. 2018). Aeschrocoris was reported to have five species in China and eight in the world. Aeschrocoris tuberculatus (Stål, 1865) and A. ceylonicus Distant, 1899 are mainly distributed in southern China, India, Myanmar, and Sri Lanka, and both are also common agricultural pests (Fan 2011). However, most studies of the genus Aeschrocoris have focused on morphological descriptions and lack molecular data.

In this study, we analyze the mitochondrial genomes of A. tuberculatus and A. ceylonicus in detail, including genome structure, nucleotide composition, and codon
usage. Meanwhile, we also construct the genome structure of RNA. In addition, we analyze the phylogenetic relationship of eight families of Pentatomoidea and explore the phylogenetic location of these two species. The results of this study will provide a reference for phylogenetic analyses and identification of the Pentatomoidea.

**Materials and methods**

**Sample collection**

Adult specimens of *Aeschrocoris tuberculatus* and *A. ceylonicus* were collected from Baihua Ling (Baoshan City, Yunnan Province, China; 25°16'43"N, 98°48'12"E) on 13 August 2015 and from Guanlan Ting (Taohua Island, Zhoushan City, Zhejiang Province, China; 29°50'31"N, 122°14'13"E) on 4 August 2016. All samples were immediately placed in anhydrous ethanol and stored in a refrigerator at −25 °C until DNA was extracted. The species were identified by Qing Zhao.

**DNA extraction and sequencing**

Whole-genome DNA was extracted from the thoracic muscle of the samples using the Genomic DNA Extraction Kit (BGI, Wuhan, Hubei, China). Concentrations of samples were detected using Qubit Fluorometer and microplate reader (Mardis and McCombie 2017). The integrity of the samples was tested by agarose gel electrophoresis. High-throughput pair-ended sequencing (PE150) was performed on DNBSEQ platform for the complete mitochondrial genomes of the two species (Chen et al. 2018). All the above operations were carried out in the high-throughput laboratory at Wuhan BGI Technology Services Co., Ltd. (Wuhan, Hubei, China).

**Genome annotation and sequence analysis**

When the assembly was complete, the complete mitogenomes were manually annotated using Geneious v. 11.0 software (Kearse et al. 2012). Two reference sequences (*Eurydema gebleri* and *Brachymna tenuis*) for annotation were obtained from the Basic Local Alignment Search tool (BLAST) in the NCBI database. The boundaries of the PCGs were determined using Open Reading Frame Finder on the NCBI website (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/gorf/gorf.html). MEGA v. 11.0 (Tamura et al. 2021) was used to translate the proteins to verify the start codons, stop codons, and amino acid sequences and to ensure the accuracy of the sequences. We annotated tRNA sequences using tRNAscan-SE 2.0 (http://lowelab.ucsc.edu/tRNAscan-SE/; Lowe and Eddy 1997) or used automatic annotation done by MITOS (http://mitos.bioinf.uni-leipzig.de/index.py/; Bernt et al. 2013) with the invertebrate mitochondrial code. The boundaries of the rRNA genes were completed based on the positions of adjacent genes and published rRNA gene sequences (Boore 2006). The control region was identified through the boundary of the neighboring genes.
The base composition, codon usage (RSCU), and amino acid composition of the mitogenome were analyzed using MEGA v. 11.0. The skew of the nucleotide composition was calculated as follows: AT-skew = (A – T) / (A + T) and GC-skew = (G – C) / (G + C) (Perna and Kocher 1995; Hassanin et al. 2005; Bernt et al. 2013). DnaSP6 software (Rozas et al. 2017) was used to count the non-synonymous substitutions (Ka) and synonymous substitutions (Ks) of 13 PCGs of Pentatomoidea and to calculate the Ka/Ks values. The ratio Ka/Ks indicated the rate of evolution, the higher the ratio, and the faster the rate of evolution.

Phylogenetic analyses

In this study, we used the two newly sequenced species, 87 species from other eight families of Pentatomoidea, and two species (Geocoris pallidipennis and Kleidocerys resedae as the outgroup) from Lygaeoidea to analyze the phylogenetic position of A. tuberculatus and A. ceylonicus and the phylogenetic relationships within Pentatomoidea (Table 1). DNA alignment was inferred from the amino-acid alignment of the 13 PCGs using MUSCLE with default settings in MEGA v. 11 (Edgar 2004).

Table 1. List of species used to construct the phylogenetic tree.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Accession number</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Outgroup</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lygaeoidea</td>
<td>Lygaeidae</td>
<td>Geocoris pallidipennis</td>
<td>EU427336</td>
<td>Hua et al. 2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Kleidocerys resedae</td>
<td>KJ584365</td>
<td>Li et al. 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ingroup</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pentatomoidea</td>
<td>Acanthosomatidae</td>
<td>Acanthosoma labiduroides</td>
<td>JQ743670</td>
<td>Li et al. 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anaxandra taurina</td>
<td>NC042801</td>
<td>Liu et al. 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Satrapala edesoides</td>
<td>JQ743676</td>
<td>Li et al. 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Satrapala eukleii</td>
<td>MW847247</td>
<td>Xu et al. 2021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cydnidae</td>
<td></td>
<td>Adria magna</td>
<td>NC042429</td>
<td>Liu et al. 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Aeolis nigritus</td>
<td>MW847231</td>
<td>Xu et al. 2021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Macrocystus gibbulus</td>
<td>EU427338</td>
<td>Hua et al. 2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Macrocystus subaeneus</td>
<td>MW847241</td>
<td>Xu et al. 2021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Scoparipis salvazai</td>
<td>NC042800</td>
<td>Liu et al. 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dinidoridae</td>
<td></td>
<td>Coreidus brunneus</td>
<td>MW899158</td>
<td>Unpublished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cyclopelta parva</td>
<td>NC057739</td>
<td>Jiang 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Megynemenus gracilicorne</td>
<td>NC042810</td>
<td>Liu et al. 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pentatomidae</td>
<td></td>
<td>Aeschrocoris ceylonicus</td>
<td>OP526368</td>
<td>This study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Aeschrocoris tuberculatus</td>
<td>OP526367</td>
<td>This study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Arma custo</td>
<td>NC051562</td>
<td>Wu et al. 2020</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anaxialis muagarei</td>
<td>NC061538</td>
<td>Unpublished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Brachyyna tenuis</td>
<td>NC042802</td>
<td>Liu et al. 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Carbula sinica</td>
<td>NC037741</td>
<td>Jiang 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Catacanthus incarnatus</td>
<td>NC042804</td>
<td>Liu et al. 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Capistrus obscurus</td>
<td>NC042805</td>
<td>Liu et al. 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cazira borvathi</td>
<td>NC042817</td>
<td>Liu et al. 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dalpada cinctipes</td>
<td>NC058967</td>
<td>Xu et al. 2021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dalista scabrenta</td>
<td>NC037374</td>
<td>Jiang 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Deroploa parva</td>
<td>NC063299</td>
<td>Unpublished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dimoraphynchus dybowskyi</td>
<td>NC037724</td>
<td>Zhao et al. 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dolycoris baccarum</td>
<td>NC020373</td>
<td>Zhang et al. 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Eocanthecona forcillata</td>
<td>MZ440302</td>
<td>Unpublished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Eocanthecona thomsoni</td>
<td>NC042816</td>
<td>Liu et al. 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Eucydema dominulus</td>
<td>NC044762</td>
<td>Zhao et al. 2019b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classification</td>
<td>Family</td>
<td>Species</td>
<td>Accession number</td>
<td>Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pentatomoidea</td>
<td>Pentatomidae</td>
<td>Eurydema gebleri</td>
<td>NC027489</td>
<td>Yuan et al. 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Eurydema luteafera</td>
<td>NC044763</td>
<td>Zhao et al. 2019b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Eurydema maracaenoda</td>
<td>NC037042</td>
<td>Zhao et al. 2017b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Eurydema oleracea</td>
<td>NC044764</td>
<td>Zhao et al. 2019b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Eurydema qinlingensis</td>
<td>NC044765</td>
<td>Unpublished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Eurydema ventralis</td>
<td>MG584837</td>
<td>Unpublished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Erthesina fullo</td>
<td>NC042202</td>
<td>Ji et al. 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Eysarcoris aeneus</td>
<td>MK841489</td>
<td>Zhao et al. 2019a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Eysarcoris annamita</td>
<td>MW852483</td>
<td>Li et al. 2021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Eysarcoris gibbous</td>
<td>MW846868</td>
<td>Li et al. 2021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Eysarcoris gutigerus</td>
<td>NC047222</td>
<td>Chen et al. 2020</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Eysarcoris montivagus</td>
<td>MW846867</td>
<td>Li et al. 2021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Eysarcoris rosaceus</td>
<td>MT165687</td>
<td>Li et al. 2021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Glostus dorsalis</td>
<td>NC058968</td>
<td>Xu et al. 2021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Gonoapis affinis</td>
<td>NC036745</td>
<td>Chen et al. 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Graphosoma rubrolinatum</td>
<td>NC03875</td>
<td>Wang et al. 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Halomyrina holys</td>
<td>NC013272</td>
<td>Lee et al. 2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hippopotus koreanus</td>
<td>NC058969</td>
<td>Xu et al. 2021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hoplostethus incisa</td>
<td>NC042799</td>
<td>Liu et al. 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Membrana violacea</td>
<td>NC042818</td>
<td>Liu et al. 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Nezara viridula</td>
<td>NC011755</td>
<td>Hua et al. 2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Neourtina typica</td>
<td>NC058971</td>
<td>Xu et al. 2021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Palomena viridissima</td>
<td>NC050166</td>
<td>Unpublished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pentatoma metallica</td>
<td>NC058972</td>
<td>Xu et al. 2021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pentatoma rufipes</td>
<td>MT861131</td>
<td>Zhao et al. 2021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pentatoma semiannulata</td>
<td>NC053653</td>
<td>Unpublished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Picromerus grisescens</td>
<td>NC036418</td>
<td>Zhao et al. 2017a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Picromerus lewisi</td>
<td>NC058610</td>
<td>Mu et al. 2022</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Plascomerum usus</td>
<td>NC042812</td>
<td>Liu et al. 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Plautia crassata</td>
<td>NC057080</td>
<td>Wang et al. 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Plautia fringiliata</td>
<td>NC042813</td>
<td>Liu et al. 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Plautia luteonigra</td>
<td>NC058973</td>
<td>Xu et al. 2021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Priassus spiniger</td>
<td>OK546352</td>
<td>Unpublished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Scitismaphora lutea</td>
<td>NC042815</td>
<td>Liu et al. 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tholusiopsis proximus</td>
<td>NC063030</td>
<td>Unpublished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Zicrona caerulea</td>
<td>NC058303</td>
<td>Zhao et al. 2020</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plataspidae</td>
<td></td>
<td>Brevipalpus subaeneus</td>
<td>MW847232</td>
<td>Xu et al. 2021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Calacta lugubris</td>
<td>MW847233</td>
<td>Xu et al. 2021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Coptosoma bifaria</td>
<td>EU427334</td>
<td>Hua et al. 2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Coptosoma variegatum</td>
<td>OP123035</td>
<td>Zhu et al. 2022</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Megacopta bituminata</td>
<td>OP123020</td>
<td>Zhu et al. 2022</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Megacopta caliginosa</td>
<td>OP123022</td>
<td>Zhu et al. 2022</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Megacopta centronubila</td>
<td>OP123024</td>
<td>Zhu et al. 2022</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Megacopta cribriaria</td>
<td>JF288758</td>
<td>Unpublished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Megacopta cribricolla</td>
<td>OP123025</td>
<td>Zhu et al. 2022</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Megacopta distanti</td>
<td>OP123028</td>
<td>Zhu et al. 2022</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Megacopta horvathi</td>
<td>OP123029</td>
<td>Zhu et al. 2022</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Megacopta Lobata</td>
<td>OP123031</td>
<td>Zhu et al. 2022</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scutelleridae</td>
<td></td>
<td>Cantao ocellatus</td>
<td>MF497713</td>
<td>Liu et al. 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Chrysocephaloidus stollii</td>
<td>NC051942</td>
<td>Unpublished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Coelygaster testudinaria</td>
<td>NC042808</td>
<td>Liu et al. 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pocicolea drusae</td>
<td>MW847246</td>
<td>Xu et al. 2021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tessaratomidae</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dalcantha dilata</td>
<td>Q910981</td>
<td>Li et al. 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Eusthenes cupreas</td>
<td>NC022449</td>
<td>Song et al. 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mattiphus splendidus</td>
<td>NC053743</td>
<td>Xu et al. 2020</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pygmaerus ochraceus</td>
<td>MW809159</td>
<td>Wang et al. 2021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tessaratoma papillosa</td>
<td>NC037742</td>
<td>Jiang 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urostylididae</td>
<td></td>
<td>Urostylis flavoscutata</td>
<td>NC037747</td>
<td>Jiang 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Urolestis histrionica</td>
<td>MW847249</td>
<td>Xu et al. 2021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Urochola quadrinotata</td>
<td>NC020144</td>
<td>Li et al. 2012</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To determine whether the sequences contained phylogenetic information, we tested nucleotide substitution saturation and plotted transition and transversion rates against the TN93 distances for two datasets: all codon positions of the 13 PCGs (PCG123) and first and second codon positions of PCGs (PCG12) using DAMBE to further validate the feasibility of constructing a phylogenetic tree (Xia and Xie 2001; Xia and Lemey 2009). Heterogeneity in sequence divergence in the two datasets was analyzed by using AliGROOVE with the default sliding window size (Kück et al. 2014). PartitionFinder was used to provide the best fit model (Kalyaanamoorthy et al. 2017). IQtree v. 1.6.12 was used to construct the ML tree (Nguyen et al. 2015), and node confidence was assessed with 500,000 replications for bootstrap (Hoang et al. 2018). The phylogenetic trees were constructed using two datasets, PCG123 and PCG12. Finally, the generated phylogenetic trees were visualized using the online editing tool Chipolt (https://www.chiplot.online).

**Results**

**Genomic features**

The complete mitogenomes of *Aeschrocoris tuberculatus* (16,134 bp, GenBank accession no. OP56367) and *A. ceylonicus* (14,142 bp, GenBank accession no. OP56368) were obtained (Fig. 1). The mitogenomes of the two species contain a control region and 37 genes (13 PCGs, 22 tRNA genes, and two rRNA genes). The composition of genes is similar to those described in other pentatomid insects (Lee et al. 2009; Zhao et al. 2017a, 2017b; Chen et al. 2019). In addition, the mitochondrial genomes of both species have similar overlapping regions and gene spacer regions. In *A. tuberculatus*, the intergenic overlap region is 34 bp in length and contains seven overlapping regions of 1–8 bp in length. The longest overlapping regions are located between *trnW*/*trnC* and *nad6/cytb*. The intergenic spacer is 127 bp in length and contains 17 spacers ranging from 1 to 25 bp in size. The longest spacer (25 bp) is located between *trnS2* and *nad1*. In *A. ceylonicus*, seven intergenic overlapping regions were examined with varying lengths of 1–8 bp, and the longest overlapping region is at the same position (between *trnW* and *trnC*, *nad6*, and *cytb*) as in *A. tuberculatus*. The intergenic spacers are the same in *A. ceylonicus* as in *A. tuberculatus*, and the longest spacer (33 bp) region is also situated between *trnS2* and *nad1* (Table 2).

**Nucleotide composition and codon usage**

The nucleotide composition of two species shows the predominance of A+T in the complete mitochondrial genome (Table 3). The order of base composition of the entire sequence in *A. tuberculatus* and *A. ceylonicus* is A (42.32%) > T (31.55%) > C (15.20%) > G (10.94%) and A (42.36%) > T (31.72%) > C (14.94%) > G (10.98%), respectively. This bias was observed in the complete mitochondrial genome. The A+T
Figure 1. Mitochondrial genome structure of *Aeschrocoris tuberculatus* and *A. ceylonicus*. Arrows indicate the orientation of gene transcription. PCGs are shown as blue arrows; tRNAs are named using single-letter amino acid abbreviations.
content of the two species is 73.09% and 72.79% in PCGs, 76.11% and 76.63% in tRNAs, 75.97% and 76.60% in rRNAs and 73.99% and 77.35% in the control region, respectively. The complete genomes of both also show a clear AC skew (GC skew = –0.16, AT skew = 0.15, GC skew = –0.15, and AT skew = 0.14), suggesting a greater abundance of A than T and a higher abundance of C than G.

The composition of nucleotides is also reflected in the use of codons. The RSCUs of the two species show some differences and are compared to each other in Fig. 2. The most frequently used codons are UUA (Leu2), and most of the codons with high frequency ended in A/T. These results indicate that in the codon composition of *Aeschrocoris* mitogenomes, AT was superior to GC.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Strand</th>
<th>Anticodon</th>
<th>Position</th>
<th>Size (bp)</th>
<th>Initiation codon</th>
<th>Stop codon</th>
<th>Intergenic nucleotide</th>
<th>Position</th>
<th>Size (bp)</th>
<th>Initiation codon</th>
<th>Stop codon</th>
<th>Intergenic nucleotide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>trnI</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>GAT</td>
<td>1–71</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1–71</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trnQ</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>TTG</td>
<td>80–148</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>79–147</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trnM</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>CAT</td>
<td>154–224</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>152–222</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nad2</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>225–1208</td>
<td>984</td>
<td>ATA</td>
<td>TAA</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>226–1206</td>
<td>981</td>
<td>ATA</td>
<td>TAA</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trnW</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>TCA</td>
<td>1226–1292</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>1223–1290</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trnC</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>GCA</td>
<td>1285–1352</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>-8</td>
<td>1283–1350</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>-8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trnY</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>GTA</td>
<td>1366–1434</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>1364–1429</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cac1</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>1450–2986</td>
<td>1537</td>
<td>TTG</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>1445–2981</td>
<td>1537</td>
<td>TTG</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trnL2</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>TAA</td>
<td>2987–3053</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2982–3048</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cco2</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>3054–3732</td>
<td>679</td>
<td>ATA</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3049–3727</td>
<td>679</td>
<td>ATA</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trnK</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>CTT</td>
<td>3733–3804</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3728–3799</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trnD</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>GTC</td>
<td>3808–3873</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3803–3869</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atp8</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>3874–4035</td>
<td>162</td>
<td>TTG</td>
<td>TAA</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3870–4031</td>
<td>162</td>
<td>TTG</td>
<td>TAA</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atp6</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>4029–4701</td>
<td>673</td>
<td>ATG</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>-7</td>
<td>4025–4697</td>
<td>673</td>
<td>ATG</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>-7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cac3</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>4702–5490</td>
<td>789</td>
<td>ATG</td>
<td>TAA</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4698–5486</td>
<td>789</td>
<td>ATG</td>
<td>TAA</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trnG</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>TCC</td>
<td>5490–5555</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>5486–5550</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nad3</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>5556–5909</td>
<td>354</td>
<td>ATT</td>
<td>TAA</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>5551–5904</td>
<td>354</td>
<td>ATT</td>
<td>TAA</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trnA</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>TGC</td>
<td>5914–5982</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5909–5977</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trnR</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>TCG</td>
<td>5991–6058</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>5988–6056</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trnN</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>GTC</td>
<td>6064–6131</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6061–6128</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trnS1</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>GCT</td>
<td>6133–6202</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6130–6199</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trnE</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>TTC</td>
<td>6207–6275</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6200–6269</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trnF</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>GAA</td>
<td>6274–6341</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>-2</td>
<td>6268–6335</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>-2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nad5</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>GAA</td>
<td>6346–8052</td>
<td>1707</td>
<td>ATG</td>
<td>TAA</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6340–8046</td>
<td>1707</td>
<td>ATG</td>
<td>TAA</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trnH</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>GTG</td>
<td>8055–8123</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8049–8117</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nad4</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>8127–9455</td>
<td>1329</td>
<td>ATG</td>
<td>TAA</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>8121–9449</td>
<td>1329</td>
<td>ATG</td>
<td>TAA</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nad4l</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>9449–9736</td>
<td>288</td>
<td>ATT</td>
<td>TAA</td>
<td>-7</td>
<td>9443–9730</td>
<td>288</td>
<td>ATT</td>
<td>TAA</td>
<td>-7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mtT</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>TGT</td>
<td>9739–9807</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9733–9801</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mtN</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>TGG</td>
<td>9808–9871</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>9802–9865</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nad6</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>9880–10535</td>
<td>474</td>
<td>ATA</td>
<td>TAA</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9868–10347</td>
<td>480</td>
<td>TTG</td>
<td>TAA</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cytB</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>10346–11482</td>
<td>1137</td>
<td>ATG</td>
<td>TAA</td>
<td>-8</td>
<td>10340–11476</td>
<td>1137</td>
<td>ATG</td>
<td>TAA</td>
<td>-8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trnS2</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>TGA</td>
<td>11482–11550</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>11476–11534</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nad1</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>11576–12499</td>
<td>924</td>
<td>TTG</td>
<td>TAG</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>11568–12491</td>
<td>924</td>
<td>TTG</td>
<td>TAG</td>
<td>33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trnL1</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>TAG</td>
<td>12500–12565</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>12492–12557</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trnL</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>TGG</td>
<td>12566–13874</td>
<td>1309</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>12558–13859</td>
<td>1302</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trnV</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>TAC</td>
<td>13875–13942</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>13860–13927</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rns</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>13943–14751</td>
<td>809</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>13928–14740</td>
<td>813</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OH</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>14752–16134</td>
<td>1383</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>14741–16142</td>
<td>1402</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 3. Nucleotide composition of the mitogenomes of *Aeschrocoris tuberculatus* and *A. ceylonicus*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Length (bp)</th>
<th>A%</th>
<th>C%</th>
<th>G%</th>
<th>T%</th>
<th>A+T%</th>
<th>AT-skew</th>
<th>GC-skew</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Whole genome</td>
<td>16134</td>
<td>42.32</td>
<td>15.20</td>
<td>10.94</td>
<td>31.55</td>
<td>73.86</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>−0.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCGs</td>
<td>11036</td>
<td>32.63</td>
<td>13.54</td>
<td>13.37</td>
<td>40.46</td>
<td>73.09</td>
<td>−0.11</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tRNA</td>
<td>1503</td>
<td>38.39</td>
<td>10.18</td>
<td>13.71</td>
<td>37.72</td>
<td>76.11</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rRNA</td>
<td>2118</td>
<td>32.39</td>
<td>8.40</td>
<td>15.63</td>
<td>43.58</td>
<td>75.97</td>
<td>−0.15</td>
<td>0.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control region</td>
<td>1383</td>
<td>38.41</td>
<td>14.49</td>
<td>11.52</td>
<td>35.58</td>
<td>77.99</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>−0.11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Length (bp)</th>
<th>A%</th>
<th>C%</th>
<th>G%</th>
<th>T%</th>
<th>A+T%</th>
<th>AT-skew</th>
<th>GC-skew</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Whole genome</td>
<td>16142</td>
<td>42.36</td>
<td>14.94</td>
<td>10.98</td>
<td>31.72</td>
<td>74.08</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>−0.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCGs</td>
<td>11040</td>
<td>32.40</td>
<td>13.65</td>
<td>13.56</td>
<td>40.39</td>
<td>72.79</td>
<td>−0.11</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tRNA</td>
<td>1502</td>
<td>38.08</td>
<td>9.85</td>
<td>13.52</td>
<td>38.55</td>
<td>76.63</td>
<td>−0.01</td>
<td>0.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rRNA</td>
<td>2115</td>
<td>32.77</td>
<td>8.32</td>
<td>15.08</td>
<td>43.83</td>
<td>76.60</td>
<td>−0.14</td>
<td>0.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control region</td>
<td>1402</td>
<td>39.40</td>
<td>12.58</td>
<td>10.06</td>
<td>37.96</td>
<td>77.35</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>−0.11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 2. Relative synonymous codon usage (RSCU) within *Aeschrocoris tuberculatus* and *A. ceylonicus*. Codon families are shown on the x-axis and the frequency of RSCU on the y-axis.
Protein-coding genes

The length of PCGs in *A. tuberculatus* and *A. ceylonicus* is 11,036 bp and 11,040 bp, respectively. For the 13 PCGs, nine (*cox1*, *cox2*, *cox3*, *atp6*, *atp8*, *nad2*, *nad3*, *nad6*, and *cytb*) are encoded on the major strand (J-strand), whereas the other four are encoded on the minor strand (N-strand). The typical ATN (five with ATG, three with ATA, and two with ATT) are used as the start codon in most PCGs of these species, except for the *atp8*, *nad1*, and *cox1* genes, which use TTG as the start codon. *cox1*, *cox2*, and *atp6* sequences terminate with a single T, the terminal codon of *nad1* sequences is TAG, and the stop codon for the remaining genes was TAA.

In addition, we calculated non-synonymous substitutions (Ka), synonymous substitutions (Ks), and Ka/Ks ratios for the 13 PCGs of the Pentatomoidea (Fig. 3), and the evolutionary rates of the 13 PCGs are compared. The results clearly show that *atp8* evolved at the fastest rate (Ka/Ks = 0.75), *cox1* evolved at the slowest rate (Ka/Ks = 0.06), and the other genes evolved in the order of *nad6* > *nad2* > *nad4* > *nad5* > *nad4l* > *atp6* > *nad3* > *nad1* > *cox2* > *cox3* > *cytb*. Furthermore, all 13 PCGs have Ks values greater than Ka values and Ka/Ks ratios less than 1, indicating that these genes are affected by purifying selection.

Transfer and ribosomal RNAs

The total lengths of the tRNAs of *A. tuberculatus* and *A. ceylonicus* are 1,503 bp and 1,502 bp, respectively. And the length of tRNA genes are from 64 bp to 72 bp. Fourteen genes (*trnA*, *trnE*, *trnD*, *trnG*, *trnK*, *trnI*, *trnL2*, *trnM*, *trnN*, *trnR*, *trnS1*, *trnS2*, *trnL1*, *trnL3*, *trnF*).
trnT, and trnW) are located on the J-strand, and other eight genes on the N-strand. Only trnS1 lacks a dihydrouridine (DHU) arm; the other tRNA genes all have the classic cloverleaf secondary structure. In addition to the typical base pairs (A-U and G-C), some wobble G-U pairs appear in these secondary structures, which can form stable chemical bonds between G and U (Fig. 4).

Figure 4. Predicted secondary structure of tRNA genes in *Aeschrocoris tuberculatus*. Conserved sites in Pentatomoidea are marked orange. Nonconserved sites in *A. tuberculatus* and *A. ceylonicus* are marked blue.
The *rrnL* and *rrnS* genes have the same situation in the two species. The *rrnL* gene is located between *trnL1* (CUN) and *rrnV*, and the *rrnS* gene is located between *trnV* and the control region; they are encoded on the N-strand. The lengths of the two genes in *A. tuberculatus* are 1,309 bp (*rrnL*) and 809 bp (*rrnS*); the complete secondary structures are shown in Figs 5, 6. In *A. ceylonicus*, the two genes are 1,302 bp (*rrnL*) and 813 bp (*rrnS*) in length. The order of the base content of the rRNA genes is T (43.58%) > A (32.39%) > G (15.63%) > C (8.40%) and T (43.83%) > A (32.77%) > G (15.08%) > C (8.32%), respectively. The AT-skews are negative, and the GC-skews are positive.

The control region

The control is the main regulatory region for replication and transcription of the mitochondrial genome (Taanman 1999; Stewart and Beckenbach 2006; Cameron 2014). The variation in length of the control region is mainly caused by the lengths and numbers of repeating units. In conclusion, the sequence and structure of the mitochondrial control region is highly variable in Hemiptera (Moreno et al. 2010). The control region of *A. tuberculatus*, located between *rrnS* and *trnl* genes, is 1,383 bp in length, and the A + T content is 73.99%. The length of the control region of *A. ceylonicus*, at 1,402 bp, is similar to *A. tuberculatus*, and the A + T content is 77.35%. Moreover, both species have a variety of different tandem repeat units (Fig. 7).

**Figure 5.** Predicted secondary structure of the *rrnL* in *Aeschrocoris tuberculatus*. Conserved sites in Pentatomoidea are marked orange. Nonconserved sites in *A. tuberculatus* and *A. ceylonicus* are marked blue.
Figure 6. Predicted secondary structure of the *rrnS* in *Aeschrocoris tuberculatus*. Conserved sites in Pentatomoidea are marked orange. Nonconserved sites in *A. tuberculatus* and *A. ceylonicus* are marked blue.
Tests of substitution saturation and heterogeneity

Before constructing the phylogenetic tree, we evaluated the substitution saturation of the PCG123 and PCG12 datasets. The results show that the Xia saturation index (Iss) is below the critical values for a symmetric (Iss.cSym) and asymmetric (Iss.cAsym) topology (Fig. 8). Meanwhile, the conversion rate and modified genetic distance both increase linearly, indicating that the nucleotide sequences of two datasets are not saturated.

Our analysis of the heterogeneity of the base composition in the two datasets show that the heterogeneity of PCG123 is higher than in PCG12, thus indicating a higher heterogeneity of the third site of the codon. The degree of heterogeneity between the two datasets is certainly consistent with the construction of a phylogenetic tree, which can be used for phylogenetic analysis (Fig. 9).

Phylogenetic analyses

We constructed phylogenetic trees of Pentatomoidea based on the two datasets using the ML method (Figs 10, 11). The results show that the topological structure of the tree is reliable. The relationship is as follows: (Urostylididae + ((Acanthosomatidae + ((Cydnidae + (Dinidoridae + Tessaratomidae)) + (Scutelleridae + Plataspidae))) + Pentatomidae)). All analyses also show that *A. tuberculatus* and *A. ceylonicus* are the earliest diverging lineage within Pentatomidae and cluster as a sister group. The monophyly of Pentatominae and Podopinae is rejected, as both are scattered within the Pentatomidae clade. However, we recovered the monophyly of Asopinae and Phyllocephalinae with strong support values and high internal node support values. The two subfamilies are nested in one of the Pentatomininae clades, so the subfamilies of Pentatomidae need further research.

Discussion and conclusions

In this study, we sequenced and annotated the complete mitogenomes of *Aeschrocoris tuberculatus* and *A. ceylonicus* using NGS technology and Geneious v. 11.0. Our analysis comparing of the mitochondrial genomes of the two species show that the gene arrangement is highly conserved, which is consistent with other published mitochondrial genomes of Hemiptera (Hua et al. 2008; Lee et al. 2009; Song et al. 2013).
Figure 8. The substitution saturation analysis of two datasets a PCG123 b PCG12.

Figure 9. AliGROOVE analysis of 89 Pentatomoidea species a based on PCG123 b based on PCG12. The mean similarity score between sequences is represented by colored squares, based on AliGROOVE scores ranging from −1, which indicates a great difference in rates from the remainder of the data set (= heterogeneity, red color) to +1, which indicates rates that matched all other comparisons (blue color, as in this case).
The lengths of the mitochondrial genomes of *A. tuberculatus* and *A. ceylonicus* are 16,134 bp and 16,142 bp, respectively. There were four overlapping regions in the mitochondrial genome of these two species. The positions of their overlapping regions are identical. One of the longest overlaps, located between *trnW* and *trnC*, is 8 bp in length, and the overlapping bases are AAGCTTTA, which is common in pentatomid species (Yuan et al. 2015; Zhao et al. 2019a). The other two pairs of genes, namely *atp8*/*atp6* and *nad4*/*nad4l*, overlap by 7 bp, and both overlapping bases are ATGATATAAA. Specifically, an overlap of 8 bp between *nad6* and *cytb* was also observed, and the overlapping bases are ATGATATAA. This is different from that found in previous studies on Pentatomidae. Between *trnS2* and *nad1*, the longest spacer region appeared in both, which is consistent with the findings of other studies (Hua et al. 2008; Zhao et al. 2019a). The difference of mitogenome size between *A. tuberculatus* and *A. ceylonicus* is due to the length difference of the noncoding region.

In most Pentatomidae mitochondrial genomes, only *cox1* has TTG as its start codon, and the remaining 12 PCGs use ATN as their start codon (Hua et al. 2008; Li et al. 2012). However, there is a difference between *A. tuberculatus* and *A. ceylonicus* in that...
nine PCGs have the same start codons ATN, and four PCGs (nad1, cox1, atp8, and nad6) use TTG as the start codon. Most PCGs use the TAA as the stop codon; nevertheless, in some insects, nad1, cox2, and some other genes use the single T or TAG as the stop codon (Liu et al. 2012; Song et al. 2013). In this study, our results show most PCGs stop with TAA, and three PCGs (cox1, cox2, and atp6) stop with a single T. However, one PCG (nad1) stops with TAG. In PCGs, cox1 is commonly used for barcode analysis and genus or species identification due to its slow rate of evolution (Hebert et al. 2004).

The composition of the four bases in A. tuberculatus and A. ceylonicus is A>T>C>G. There is a clear AT preference in nucleotide composition. Most tRNAs have the typical cloverleaf secondary structure as observed in Hemiptera. However, the lack of a DHU arm in the trnS1 is common in hemipteran mitogenomes (Wolstenholme 1992; Shi et al. 2012). rRNA and rRNA in A. tuberculatus and A. ceylonicus lie between trnL1 (CUN) and trnV, and between trnV and the control region, respectively. In Pentatomoidea, rRNA contains 19.37% conserved sites and included three domains. The rRNA contains 26.81% conserved sites and six domains (domain III is absent), and the IV and V domains are relatively conservative.
Through the topological structure of the trees, the clade including Urostylididae is found to be the earliest clade lineage. It forms a sister group to the other families. The relationship of (Cydnidae + (Dinidoridae + Tessaratomidae)) was recovered in our phylogenetic results with high support; these results are consistent with previous studies (Grazia et al. 2008; Yuan et al. 2015; Wu et al. 2018; Zhao et al. 2018; Xu et al. 2021). Xu et al. (2021) used PCGRNA and PCG12RNA data sets to recover the sister-group relationship of (Plataspidae + Scutelleridae) and (Dinidoridae + Tessaratomidae), and we also obtained this result. Of course, there are still other conclusions to be made based on the phylogenetic studies of Pentatomoidea. Previously, two sister groups (Plataspidae + Pentatomidae) and (Cydnidae + Scutelleridae) were recovered (Zhao et al. 2018; Liu et al. 2019). Possible reasons include, for example, the number of samples, the selection of outliers, the selection of data sets, and the influence of branches. In addition, the saturation and heterogeneity of the third site of PCG has little effect on the topological structure of the trees. In the study of Hemiptera insects, retention of the third site of PCG does not reduce the reliability of the phylogenetic results (Fenn et al. 2008). Although in many studies, the results obtained from different data sets and inference methods show that there are some contradictions among the relationships among families, our results based on more species have higher reliability. This study also confirms that adding more mitochondrial genome sequences is the key to solve the phylogenetic relationships of Pentatomoidea at various different taxonomic levels.

We studied the genus *Aeschrocoris* at a molecular level for the first time and preliminarily identified its taxonomic position and evolution in phylogenetic relationships. This study not only discusses the relationships among families, but it also adds new molecular data for Pentatomidae. These results demonstrate that mitochondrial genomes can effectively reveal the phylogenetic relationships among differing taxonomic hierarchies. We should sequence more mitochondrial genes to provide greater evidence for exploring the phylogenetic relationships among taxa.

**Acknowledgements**

This research was funded by the National Science Foundation Project of China (no. 31872272 and 32100370); the Research Project Supported by Shanxi Scholarship Council of China (no. 2020-064 and 2020-065), Natural Science Research General Project of Shanxi Province (No.202103021224331 and 202103021224132).

**References**


The mitochondrial genome research

165


The mitochondrial genome research


On four new species of the orb-weaver spider genus *Araneus* Clerck, 1757 (Araneae, Araneidae) from southern China

Yibei Wu¹, Cheng Wang¹, Nanfei Wu², Mengfei Zhang², Xiaoqi Mi¹

¹ College of Agriculture and Forestry Engineering and Planning, Guizhou Provincial Key Laboratory of Biodiversity Conservation and Utilization in the Fanjing Mountain Region, Tongren University, Tongren 554300, Guizhou, China ² Central South Inventory and Planning Institute of National Forestry and Grassland Administration, Changsha, Hunan 410014, China

Corresponding author: Xiaoqi Mi (mixiaoqi1018@163.com)

Academic editor: Sarah Crews | Received 7 February 2023 | Accepted 19 April 2023 | Published 9 May 2023


Abstract

Four new species of *Araneus* Clerck, 1757 from southern China are described: *A. mayanghe* Mi & Wang, sp. nov. (♂♀) from Guizhou, *A. shiwandashan* Mi & Wang, sp. nov. (♂♀) from Guangxi, and *A. zhoui* Mi & Wang, sp. nov. (♂♀) from Hainan are assigned to the *A. sturmi* group, and *A. fenzhi* Mi & Wang, sp. nov. (♂♀) from Hunan, Guizhou and Jiangxi is not assigned to any species group. A new combination is also proposed: *Aoaraneus octumaculalus* (Han & Zhu, 2010) comb. nov.

Keywords

Arachnida, biodiversity, diagnosis, morphology, new combination, taxonomy
Introduction

Araneidae is the third most speciose family in the order Araneae, and 3119 species in 188 genera are known worldwide, of which 437 species in 54 genera have been recorded from China (WSC 2023). Data on the family in China is far from complete. For example, ongoing surveys of Araneidae from Xishuangbanna Tropical Botanical Garden in Yunnan Province, southwestern China has produced more than 120 species and about two-fifths are new to science (Mi and Li 2021a, b, 2022).

As the largest genus of the family, *Araneus* Clerck, 1757 includes 555 species worldwide (WSC 2023), and for centuries it has been a dumping ground for araneid species, making it polyphyletic, as shown by the multi-gene phylogenetic analysis of Scharff et al. (2020).


Yin et al. (1997) placed 69 *Araneus* species into six species groups (Table 1). The following 10 species were not assigned to any of the above groups because original descriptions were too simple and/or illustrations not clear enough: *A. badiofoliatus* Schenkel, 1963, *A. badongensis* Song & Zhu, 1992, *A. decentellus* Strand, 1907, *A. diffinis* Zhu, Tu & Hu, 1988, *A. doenitzellus* Strand, 1906, *A. hetian* Hu & Wu, 1989, *A. nigromaculatus*, *A. pavlovi* Schenkel, 1953, *A. pichoni* Schenkel, 1963, and *A. virgus* (Fox, 1938).

While examining the Araneidae specimens collected in several national nature reserves in southern China, four new species of *Araneus* are identified, and they are described in this paper.
Four new Araneus species from China

**Materials and methods**

All specimens were collected by beating shrubs or by hand and are preserved in 75% ethanol. Type specimens of the new species are deposited in the Museum of Tongren University, China (TRU). The specimens were examined with an Olympus SZX16 stereomicroscope. The epigynes were cleared in lactic acid for examination and imaging. The left male pedipalp was dissected in ethanol for examination, description, and imaging. Photographs of the habitus and copulatory organs were taken with a Kuy Nice digital camera mounted on an Olympus BX43 compound microscope. Compound focus images were generated using Helicon Focus v. 6.7.1. The paths of the left copulatory ducts were drawn using Adobe Illustrator CC 2018.

All measurements are given in millimeters. Leg measurements are given as total length (femur, patella + tibia, metatarsus, tarsus). Abbreviations used in the text and figures are as follows: ALE anterior lateral eye; AME anterior median eye; C conductor; CD copulatory duct; CO copulatory opening; E embolus; EL embolic lamella; ET embolic tooth; FD fertilization duct; MA median apophysis; MOA median ocular area; PLE posterior lateral eye; PME posterior median eye; Sc scape; Sp spermatheca; ST subterminal apophysis; TA terminal apophysis.

---

**Table 1.** Yin et al.’s (1997) grouping of 69 Araneus species.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species group</th>
<th>Included species</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. dehaani group</td>
<td>A. dehaani (Doleschall, 1859), A. albomaculatus Yin, Wang, Xie &amp; Peng, 1990 and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A. shunhuangensis Yin, Wang, Xie &amp; Peng, 1990</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. ejusmodi group</td>
<td>A. cercidius Yin, Wang, Xie &amp; Peng, 1990, A. ejusmodi Bösenberg &amp; Strand, 1906,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A. elongatus Yin, Wang &amp; Xie, 1989, A. inustus, A. mitificus, A. pseudocentromed,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A. tengxianensis Zhu &amp; Zhang, 1994 and A. viridiventris Yaginuma, 1969</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nympha, A. octodentalis Song &amp; Zhu, 1992, A. pseudosturmii Yin, Wang, Xie &amp; Peng,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1990, A. sturni (Hahn, 1831), A. verminaculatus Zhu &amp; Wang, 1994, A. vipherfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Schenkel, 1963, A. wulongensis Song &amp; Zhu, 1992 and A. yuannimensis Yin, Wang,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Xie &amp; Peng, 1990</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. diadematus group</td>
<td>A. affinis Zhu, Tu &amp; Hu, 1988, A. akusensis Yin, Xie &amp; Bao, 1996, A. ancurus Zhu,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tu &amp; Hu, 1988, A. angulausus Clerck, 1757, A. baotianmanensis, A. beijiangensis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A. boedembergii (Fox, 1938), A. chunhuaisa Zhu, Tu &amp; Hu, 1988, A. circumbasilaris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1757, A. flagelliformis Zhu &amp; Yaginuma, 1992, A. flavida Yin, Wang, Xie &amp; Peng,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1990, A. grattiola Yin, Wang, Xie &amp; Peng, 1990, A. guandishanensis Zhu, Tu &amp; Hu,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1988, A. himalayaensis, A. licenti Schenkel, 1953, A. lindhuis Yaginuma, Wang,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tikader &amp; Bal, 1981, A. pentagonnium, A. pinguis (Karsch, 1879), A. taigunensis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Zhu, Tu &amp; Hu, 1988, A. tetrapius (Yin, Wang, Xie &amp; Peng, 1990), A. tubabdominus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and A. zebrinus Zhu &amp; Wang, 1994</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. verminaculatus group</td>
<td>A. menghunensis (Yin, Wang, Xie &amp; Peng, 1990), A. micnaiensis Yin, Wang, Xie &amp;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Peng, 1990, A. pineus, A. pseudovertricosus, A. tartaricus (Kroneberg, 1875), A.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>variegatus Yaginuma, 1960, A. ventricosus (L. Koch, 1878) and A. yuehongensis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yin, Wang, Xie &amp; Peng, 1990</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. hananensis group</td>
<td>A. hananensis and A. yunnanensis Yin, Peng &amp; Wang, 1994</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Taxonomy

Family Araneidae Clerck, 1757

Genus *Araneus* Clerck, 1757

*Araneus* Clerck, 1757: 22.

**Type species.** *Araneus angulatus* Clerck, 1757.

**Comments.** Although the four new species are different from the generotype *A. angulatus* in their smaller body size and having the abdomen lacking a pair of anterolateral humps, the epigynal base not elongated, and a shorter scape which does not extend far beyond the epigastric furrow, we provisionally place them in this genus because they share a very similar habitus and copulatory organs with other *Araneus* species. There is no doubt that their generic position needs confirmation, but it is not discussed here due to limited evidence.

*Araneus fenzhi* Mi & Wang, sp. nov.

https://zoobank.org/4F58C4BE-5F33-44A6-BD75-3233B75D7E48

Figs 1, 2, 9A–D, 10


**Etymology.** The specific name is derived from the Chinese pinyin “fenzhi”, meaning branched, referring to the threadlike branch of the embolus.

**Diagnosis.** The new species resembles *A. albadominalis* Zhu, Zhang, Zhang & Chen, 2005 in having pale green coloration in life and a similar shape of the median apophysis and conductor, but it can be distinguished as follows: 1) epigyne scape not twisted into an S-shape vs S-shaped (Zhu et al. 2005: fig. 3B); 2) copulatory openings wedge-shaped in ventral view vs round (Zhu et al. 2005: fig. 3B); 3) embolus of male pedipalp U-shaped in prolateral view vs straight (Zhu et al. 2005: fig. 3D); 4) the branch on the embolus is threadlike vs lamellar (Zhu et al. 2005: fig. 3D); and 5) carapace unicolor vs with a pair of lateral longitudinal patches (Zhu et al. 2005: fig. 3A).
Four new *Araneus* species from China

Figure 1. *Araneus fenzhi* sp. nov. A–H female paratype TRU-Araneidae-137 I, J male holotype A epigyne, ventral view B Ibid., anterior view C Ibid., posterior view D vulva, posterior view E habitus, dorsal view F Ibid., ventral view G abdomen, lateral view H Ibid., dorsal view I habitus, dorsal view J Ibid., lateral view. Scale bars: 0.1 mm (A–D); 1 mm (E–J).
Description. Male (holotype, Figs 1I, J, 2B–D, 9A–D; paratype TRU-Araneidae-138, Fig. 2A, E). Total length 3.35. Carapace 1.75 long, 1.20 wide. Abdomen 2.10 long, 1.65 wide. Clypeus 0.10 high. Eye sizes and interdistances: AME 0.10, ALE 0.06, PME 0.11, PLE 0.06, AME–AME 0.15, AME–ALE 0.15, PME–PME...
Four new Araneus species from China

0.13, PME–PLE 0.20, MOA length 0.33, anterior width 0.35, posterior width 0.33. Leg measurements: I 6.90 (2.05, 2.40, 1.70, 0.75), II 6.45 (1.95, 2.20, 1.60, 0.70), III 3.60 (1.20, 1.10, 0.80, 0.50), IV 5.25 (1.70, 1.70, 1.30, 0.55). Carapace pear-shaped, yellow; base of eyes brown. Cervical groove inconspicuous; fovea longitudinal. Chelicerae yellow; four promarginal and three retromarginal teeth. Endites almost square, yellow with very narrow, dark anterior edge, with tooth-like process laterally. Labium triangular, yellow. Sternum cordiform, yellow with dark setae. Legs yellow to brown, without annuli; femur I with eight macrosetae; tibia I with 10 macrosetae; tibia II with 12 macrosetae; tibia III with nine macrosetae; tibia IV with seven macrosetae. Abdomen oval, ~1.3× longer than wide, yellowish green with pale yellow spots; venter whitish green. Spinnerets yellowish brown.

Pedipalp (Fig. 2) with a basal femoral protrusion; patella with two bristles; median apophysis almost triangular, with a single long, slender, curved spur and a shorter broad spur; embolus twisted into a U-shape, with a threadlike branch at base, without cap (see arrows in Fig. 2A, E); conductor membranous, with a spur at base; terminal apophysis blunt, with dense denticles.

Female (paratype TRU-Araneidae-137, Fig. 1A–H). Total length 4.40. Carapace 2.35 long, 1.85 wide. Abdomen 2.80 long, 2.55 wide. Clypeus 0.10 high. Eye sizes and interdistances: AME 0.11, ALE 0.08, PME 0.13, PLE 0.08, AME–AME 0.18, AME–ALE 0.25, PME–PME 0.15, PME–PLE 0.33, MOA length 0.40, anterior width 0.40, posterior width 0.38. Leg measurements: I 8.30 (2.45, 2.95, 2.05, 0.85), II 7.70 (2.25, 2.70, 1.95, 0.80), III 4.75 (1.55, 1.50, 1.05, 0.65), IV 6.85 (2.25, 2.30, 1.60, 0.70). Habitus similar to that of male, but abdomen ~1.1× wider than long.

Epigyne (Fig. 1A–D) ~1.65× wider than long; scape with nearly parallel sides, spoon shaped distally; copulatory openings wedge shaped in ventral view, near posterior margin; copulatory ducts coiled ~360°, ~2× longer than a spermatheca diameter; spermathecae spherical, ~1/4 spermatheca diameter apart.

Variation. Total length: ♂ 2.95–3.40 (n = 5); ♀ 4.15–5.65 (n = 6). Preserved specimens grayish white. The embolic branch is generally broken off.


Comment. The oval abdomen is similar to that of members of the A. ejusmodi group, but the long, distally spoon-shaped scape differs greatly than in those species, and thus the group to which the new species belongs is unclear.

Araneus mayanghe Mi & Wang, sp. nov.

https://zoobank.org/0151AD54-FB49-424C-980D-21E4D80229DA

Figs 3, 4, 9E–H, 10

Figure 3. *Araneus mayanghe* sp. nov. A, C–H female paratype TRU-Araneidae-149 B female paratype TRU-Araneidae-150 I, J male holotype A epigyne, ventral view B ibid., ventral view C ibid., posterior view dorsal view D ibid., lateral view E vulva, posterior view F habitus, dorsal view G ibid., ventral view H ibid., lateral view habitus I ibid., dorsal view J ibid., lateral view. Scale bars: 0.1 mm (A–E); 1 mm (F–J).
**Etymology.** The specific name is a noun in apposition and refers to the type locality.

**Diagnosis.** The new species resembles *A. ryukyuanus* Tanikawa, 2001, *A. tsurusakii* Tanikawa, 2001, *A. polydentatus* Yin et al., 2007, and *A. yuanminensis* Yin, Wang, Xie & Peng, 1990 in appearance, but differs from *A. ryukyuanus* in having 1) the copulatory openings located on the posterior surface vs the ventral surface (Tanikawa 2001: fig. 20); 2) the embolus long, reaching the base of the conductor vs short and not reaching the conductor (Tanikawa 2001: fig. 21); and 3) the embolus somewhat S-shaped distally vs C-shaped (Tanikawa 2001: fig. 21). It can be distinguished from *A. tsurusakii* in having 1) the epigyne scape almost straight or slightly twisted vs extremely twisted (Tanikawa 2001: fig. 14); 2) the copulatory opening about \(~0.8\times\) the median plate width vs \(~0.33\times\) the median plate width (Tanikawa 2001: fig. 15); and 3) the embolus somewhat S-shaped distally vs C-shaped (Tanikawa 2001: figs 16–18). It differs from *A. polydentatus* in having 1) the epigyne scape almost straight vs S-shaped (Yin et al. 2007: fig. 1g); 2) the embolus S-shaped distally vs straight (Yin et al. 2007: fig. 1b); and 3) the embolus long, reaching the base of the conductor vs short and not reaching the conductor (Yin et al. 2007: fig. 1b). It differs from *A. yuanminensis* in having 1) the copulatory openings located on the posterior surface vs on the ventral surface (Yin et al. 1990: figs 66–68); 2) the spermathecae oval vs spherical (Yin et al. 1990: fig. 68); and 3) the spinnerets at the posterior 1/3 of abdomen vs at the middle of abdomen (Yin et al. 1990: fig. 65).

**Description.** Male (holotype, Figs 3I, J, 4A–D, 9E–H; paratype TRU-Araneidae-148, Fig. 4E). Total length 4.00. Carapace 2.05 long, 1.80 wide. Abdomen 2.45 long, 1.65 wide. Clypeus 0.10 high. Eye sizes and interdistances: AME 0.08, ALE 0.08, PME 0.11, PLE 0.08, AME–AME 0.15, AME–ALE 0.23, PME–PME 0.10, PME–PLE 0.28, MOA length 0.30, anterior width 0.33, posterior width 0.33. Leg measurements: I 7.30 (2.30, 2.65, 1.60, 0.75), II 7.05 (2.15, 2.65, 1.55, 0.70), III 3.75 (1.10, 1.35, 0.80, 0.50), IV 5.35 (1.80, 2.00, 1.00, 0.55). Carapace pear-shaped, yellow with dark setae; posterior eyes with brown base. Cervical groove obvious; fovea longitudinal. Chelicerae yellow; four promarginal and three retro-marginal teeth. Endites yellow with very narrow, dark anterior edge, with tooth-like process laterally. Labium triangular, yellow. Sternum cordiform, yellow with dark setae. Legs yellow to dark brown, without annuli; femur I with seven macrosetae; tibia I with 11 macrosetae; tibia II with 11 macrosetae; tibia III with 10 macrosetae, tibia IV with 11 macrosetae. Abdomen oval, blunt anteriorly and pointed posteriorly, \(~-1.5\times\) longer than wide, covered with gray setae; dorsum yellow with a large terminal dark patch and two pairs of lateral dark patches; venter grayish yellow. Spinnerets dark brown.

**Pedipalp** (Fig. 4) with basal femoral protrusion; patella with two bristles; median apophysis large, bifurcated, dorsal ramus long, curved, pointed at tip; ventral ramus short with serrated tip; embolus stout at base, slender and twisted into an S-shape distally, without cap; conductor subquadrate in retrolateral view, thickened at tip, with spur at base; terminal apophysis weakly sclerotized, digitiform; subterminal apophysis large, heavily sclerotized, concave medially.
Female (paratype TRU-Araneidae-149, Fig. 3A, C–H; paratype TRU-Araneidae-150, Fig. 3B). Total length 4.95. Carapace 2.25 long, 1.60 wide. Abdomen 3.45 long, 2.65 wide. Clypeus 0.08 high. Eye sizes and interdistances: AME 0.09, ALE...
Four new *Araneus* species from China

0.09, PME 0.13, PLE 0.09, AME–AME 0.15, AME–ALE 0.30, PME–PME 0.15, PME–PLE 0.33, MOA length 0.33, anterior width 0.30, posterior width 0.35. Leg measurements: I 7.70 (2.40, 2.90, 1.65, 0.75), II 6.85 (2.10, 2.60, 1.45, 0.70), III 4.15 (1.35, 1.45, 0.85, 0.50), IV 6.10 (2.00, 2.20, 1.35, 0.55). Habitus similar to that of male but pointed anteriorly and abdominal patches much paler.

**Epigyne** (Fig. 3A, C–E) scape almost straight, distally spoon-shaped; copulatory openings on posterior surface; copulatory ducts twisted, longer than spermatheca; spermathecae oval, not touching.

**Variation.** Total length: ♂♂ 3.55–4.00 (n = 5); ♀♀ 4.15–5.55 (n = 10). Scape of female paratype TRU-Araneidae-149 slightly twisted into an S-shape (Fig. 3B). Abdomen of male paratype TRU-Araneidae-151 dorsally with a large, grayish brown, triangular patch.

**Distribution.** Known only from the type locality (Guizhou).  

**Comment.** The oval, posteriorly pointed abdomen and the long, distally spoon-shaped scape indicate that the new species belongs to the *A. sturmi* group. Based on the similarities of the somatic morphology and genitalia, the new species is most similar to *A. polydentatus*, *A. ryukyuanus*, *A. tsurusakii*, *A. viperifer*, and *A. yuanminensis*.

---

*Araneus shiwandashan* Mi & Wang, sp. nov.  

https://zoobank.org/DF107666-FB11-4133-BFA7-8FED554A5C99  
Figs 5, 6, 9I–L, 10

**Type material.** **Holotype** ♂ (TRU-Araneidae-162), China: Guangxi Zhuang Autonomous Region, Fangchenggang City, Shangsi County, Shiwandashan National Nature Reserve (21°52.97’N, 107°54.88’E, ca 720 m), 6.X.2018, X.Q. Mi et al. leg. **Paratype:** 1♀ (TRU-Araneidae-163), same data as for holotype.

**Etymology.** The specific name is a noun in apposition and refers to the type locality.

**Diagnosis.** The new species resembles *Araneus floriformis* Liu, Li, Mi & Peng, 2022 in somatic morphology and pedipalp structures, but differs in having 1) the median apophysis bifurcated vs uniramous (Liu et al. 2022: fig. 4A–C); 2) the embolic lamella covering the embolus medially in prolateral view vs not covering the embolus medially (Liu et al. 2022: fig. 4A, D); 3) copulatory openings at the posterior surface vs laterally (Liu et al. 2022: fig. 4G, H); and 4) the epigyne scape triangular vs spoon-shaped (Liu et al. 2022: fig. 4G, H).

**Description.** **Male** (holotype, Figs 5G, H, 6, 9I–L). Total length 4.70. Carapace 2.50 long, 2.05 wide. Abdomen 2.80 long, 1.75 wide. Clypeus 0.13 high. Eye sizes and interdistances: AME 0.15, ALE 0.13, PME 0.15, PLE 0.13, AME–AME 0.15, AME–ALE 0.28, PME–PME 0.08, PME–PLE 0.33, MOA length 0.38, anterior width 0.38, posterior width 0.35. Leg measurements: I 9.35 (2.80, 3.40, 2.30, 0.85), II 8.60 (2.60, 3.10, 2.10, 0.80), III 4.90 (1.60, 1.65, 1.05, 0.60), IV 6.95 (2.15, 2.40, 1.70, 0.70). Carapace pear-shaped, yellow, with dark setae on sides of cephalic region. Cervical groove inconspicuous; fovea longitudinal. Chelicerae yellow; four promarginal and three retromarginal teeth. Endites yellow with very narrow, dark anterior edge, with
tooth-like process laterally. Labium triangular, yellow, paler at tip. Sternum cordiform, yellow with dark setae. Legs yellow with indistinct, yellowish-brown annuli; femur I with seven macrosetae; tibia I with 10 macrosetae; tibia II with 12 macrosetae; tibia III

Figure 5. *Araneus shiwandashan* sp. nov. A–F female paratype TRU-Araneidae-163 G, H male holotype A epigyne, ventral view B ibid., anterior view C ibid., posterior view D vulva, posterior view E habitus, dorsal view F ibid., ventral view G ibid., dorsal view H ibid., lateral view. Scale bars: 0.1 mm (A–D); 1 mm (E–H).
with eight macrosetae; and tibia IV with 11 macrosetae. Abdomen oval, ~1.6× longer than wide, covered with pale setae; dorsum whitish yellow with six pairs of lateral patches; posterior patches darker; venter grayish yellow. Spinnerets brown.

Figure 6. Araneus shiwandashan sp. nov. male holotype A pedipalp, prolateral view B ibid., retrolateral view C ibid., ventral view D ibid., apical view E expanded bulb, retrolateral view. Scale bars: 0.1 mm.
**Pedipalp** (Fig. 6) with basal femoral protrusion; patella with two bristles; median apophysis prominent, bifurcate, dorsal ramus long, curved, ventral ramus short, straight; embolus strongly sclerotized, with basal tooth, distally semicircular, embolic lamella long, covering part of embolus; conductor membranous, subquadrate in ventral view; terminal apophysis flattened, heavily sclerotized distally.

**Female** (paratype TRU-Araneidae-163, Fig. 5A–F). Total length 7.25. Carapace 2.45 long, 2.00 wide. Abdomen 5.10 long, 4.55 wide. Clypeus 0.08 high. Eye sizes and interdistances: AME 0.15, ALE 0.13, PME 0.15, PLE 0.13, AME–AME 0.15, AME–ALE 0.33, PME–PME 0.10, PME–PLE 0.40, MOA length 0.35, anterior width 0.38, posterior width 0.33. Leg measurements: I 7.85 (2.30, 2.85, 1.90, 0.80), II 7.10 (2.15, 2.50, 1.70, 0.75), III 4.30 (1.45, 1.40, 0.90, 0.55), IV 6.35 (2.10, 2.10, 1.50, 0.65). Femur I with a distinct macroseta prolaterally, tibia I with three distinct macrosetae prolaterally. Habitus similar to that of male.

**Epigyne** (Fig. 5A–D) ~1.9× wider than long; scape triangular, ~1.8× longer than wide, directed posteriorly; copulatory openings concave, located at posterolaterally; copulatory ducts twisted into an S-shape, longer than spermatheca; spermathecae elliptical, touching each other.

**Distribution.** Known only from the type locality (Guangxi).

**Comments.** The oval abdomen and the male pedipalp with a bifurcated median apophysis and arched terminal apophysis indicate that the new species belongs to the *A. sturmi* group, although the scape is not twisted or widened distally. Based on the somatic morphology and genitalia, the new species is most similar to *A. breviscapus*, *A. floriformis*, and *A. pianmaensis*.

---

**Araneus zhoui** Mi & Wang, sp. nov.

https://zoobank.org/C2732937-19D2-4F05-BBA9-019024985A53

Figs 7, 8, 9M–P, 10

**Type material.** **Holotype** ♂ (TRU-Araneidae-164), China: Hainan Province, Ledong Li Autonomous County, Jianfeng Township, Jianfengling National Nature Reserve (18°43.11’N, 108°52.32’E, ca 1400 m), 16.IV.2019, C. Wang & Y.F. Yang leg.

**Paratypes:** 3♂6♀ (TRU-Araneidae-165–173), same data as for holotype.

**Comparative material.** *Araneus colubrinus* Song & Zhu, 1992, 5♀, China: Guizhou Province, Yinjiang Tuja Autonomous County, Ziwei Township, Dayuanzhi Village, Huguosi (27°54.54’N, 108°46.57’E, ca 1660 m), 9.V.2020, X.Q. Mi et al. leg.

**Etymology.** The species is named after Mr Runbang Zhou who helped us with specimen collections; noun in genitive case.

**Diagnosis.** The new species resembles *A. conexus* Liu, Irfan, Yang & Peng, 2019 and *A. colubrinus* Song & Zhu, 1992 in somatic morphology and genital structures, but it can be distinguished from *A. conexus* in having 1) the female carapace with two short spines anterior to the fovea vs lacking (Liu et al. 2019: fig. 1D); 2) the anterior abdomen slightly elevated in lateral view vs extremely elevated to a pointed tip
Four new *Araneus* species from China

Figure 7. *Araneus zhoui* sp. nov. A–H female paratype TRU-Araneidae-165 I, J male holotype A epi-gyne, ventral view B ibid., anterior view C ibid., posterior view D vulva, posterior view E habitus, dorsal view F ibid., ventral view G ibid., lateral view H part of carapace, dorsal view I habitus, dorsal view J ibid., lateral view. Scale bars: 0.1 mm (A–D, H); 1 mm (E–G, I, J).
(Liu et al. 2019: fig. 1E); 3) the terminal apophysis long, touching the conductor in prolateral view vs short and not touching the conductor (Liu et al. 2019: fig. 2A, B, D, E); and 4) the distal end of the subterminal apophysis rounded in prolateral view vs concave (Liu et al. 2019: fig. 2A, D). It differs from *A. colubrinus* in having 1) the epigyne scape almost straight vs S-shaped and twisted (Song and Zhu 1992: fig. 4); and 2) the spermathecae touching each other vs separated by ~1.6× of the spermatheca width.

**Description. Male** (holotype, Figs 7I, J, 8, 9M–P). Total length 3.20. Carapace 1.60 long, 1.40 wide. Abdomen 1.95 long, 1.55 wide. Clypeus 0.05 high. Eye sizes and interdistances: AME 0.09, ALE 0.08, PME 0.11, PLE 0.08, AME–AME 0.08, AME–ALE 0.18, PME–PME 0.08, PME–PLE 0.23, MOA length 0.28, anterior width 0.25, posterior width 0.30. Leg measurements: I 6.15 (1.85, 2.15, 1.50, 0.65), II 5.45 (1.65, 1.90, 1.30, 0.60), III 3.35 (1.10, 1.10, 0.70, 0.45), IV 4.45 (1.40, 1.50, 1.05, 0.50). Carapace pear-shaped, yellow, paler anterior to fovea; ALEs, PMEs, and PLEs with black base. Cervical groove inconspicuous; fovea depressed. Chelicerae yellow; four promarginal and three retromarginal teeth. Endites yellow with very narrow, dark anterior edge, with tooth-like process laterally. Labium triangular, yellow with paler tip. Sternum cordiform, yellow with grayish brown patches, with brown setae. Legs yellow with yellowish-brown annuli; femur I with eight macrosetae; tibia I with 14 macrosetae, distally with constriction (see arrow in Fig. 9M); tibia II with 12 macrosetae; tibia III with six macrosetae; tibia IV with nine macrosetae. Abdomen oval, ~1.25× longer than wide; dorsum whitish yellow, with large grayish brown patch extending from anterior edge to posterior end, bearing four pairs of constrictions; venter grayish brown with pair of longitudinal yellow patches laterally. Spinnerets grayish brown.

**Pedipalp** (Fig. 8) with basal femoral protrusion; patella with two bristles; median apophysis with prolateral spur and four or five small retrolateral teeth; embolus tapered, curved counterclockwise at tip; conductor membranous, widest at base; terminal apophysis approximately equal in length to bulb diameter, distally touching conductor, subterminal apophysis with blunt tip in prolateral view.

**Female** (paratype TRU-Araneidae-165, Figs 7A–H). Total length 3.80. Carapace 1.60 long, 1.40 wide. Abdomen 2.85 long, 2.55 wide. Clypeus 0.03 high. Eye sizes and interdistances: AME 0.10, ALE 0.09, PME 0.13, PLE 0.09, AME–AME 0.15, AME–ALE 0.25, PME–PME 0.13, PME–PLE 0.30, MOA length 0.28, anterior width 0.28, posterior width 0.30. Leg measurements: I 5.10 (1.55, 1.90, 1.10, 0.55), II 4.45 (1.35, 1.65, 0.95, 0.50), III 2.90 (1.00, 0.95, 0.55, 0.40), IV 4.00 (1.25, 1.40, 0.90, 0.45). Habitus similar to that of male but anterior abdominal elevation more obvious, carapace with two short spines and four teeth anterior to fovea.

**Epigyne** (Fig. 7A–D): ~1.7× wider than long; scape with nearly parallel sides, distally directed ventrally; copulatory openings slit-like, ventral; copulatory ducts coiled ~360°, widest at origin, longer than spermatheca; spermathecae elliptical, touching each other.

**Variation.** Total length: ♂♂ 2.85–3.20 (n = 4); ♀♀ 2.95–4.20 (n = 6). Some female carapaces only have two short spines anterior to fovea rather than four short spines.
Four new *Araneus* species from China

**Distribution.** Known only from the type locality (Hainan).

**Comments.** The oval abdomen and the long, twisted, distally spoon-shaped scape indicate that the new species belongs to the *A. sturmi* group. The somatic morphology and genitalia indicate that the new species is most similar to *A. colubrinus* and *A. conexus*.

**Figure 8.** *Araneus zhoui* sp. nov. male holotype A pedipalp, prolateral view B ibid., retrolateral view C ibid., ventral view D ibid., apical view E expanded bulb, ventral view. Scale bars: 0.1 mm.
Figure 9. Legs of *Araneus* spp., male holotypes, prolateral view. A–D *A. fenzhi* sp. nov. E–H *A. mayanghe* sp. nov. I–L *A. shiwandashan* sp. nov. M–P *A. zhoui* sp. nov. A, E, I, M legs I; B, F, J, N legs II; C, G, K, O legs III; D, H, L, P legs IV. Scale bars: 1 mm.
Four new Araneus species from China

Genus *Aoaraneus* Tanikawa, Yamasaki & Petcharad, 2021

*Aoaraneus* Tanikawa, Yamasaki & Petcharad, 2021: 89.

**Type species.** *Aoaraneus pentagrammicus* (Karsch, 1879).

*Aoaraneus octumaculalus* (Han & Zhu, 2010), **comb. nov.**

Fig. 10

*Araneus octumaculalus* Han & Zhu, 2010: 58, figs 1–6. (Type material not examined.)


**Description.** See Han and Zhu (2010).

**Comments.** The type locality of *A. octumaculalus* is in Changjiang County, Hainan Province. The type specimens were not examined because this species was well described and illustrated (Han and Zhu 2010), and both male and female specimens of this species from nearby localities in Hainan were examined. The new combination is based on the following characters of *Aoaraneus*: long, wrinkled and flexible scape with bent tip; long terminal and subterminal apophyses, median apophysis with apical and basal projections; male endite with lateral tooth, male coxa I with ventral hook, and male femur II with groove.

**Discussion**

The *Araneus dehaani* group of Yin et al. (1997) included three species. The extreme sexual dimorphism of the species “*A. dehaani*” (now *Parawixia dehaani*) was discussed by Scharff et al. (2020), and molecular phylogenetic analysis has indicated that this species belonged to a new genus in the Backobourkiines. Because *A. albomaculatus* also shows extreme sexual dimorphism (female ~6.2× longer than male) and the morphology is similar to “*A. dehaani*”, it is likely in the same genus. However, a third species, *A. shunhuangensis*, does not show extreme sexual dimorphism, and the long triangular epigyne, rather flattened pedipalp bulb, single macroseta on the male pedipalp patella, and the enlarged male tibia II (Yin et. al 2007) indicate that it may belong to another genus.
Yin et al. (1997) based the *A. ejusmodi* group on the following characters: the oval or elongate-oval abdomen and the epigyne with a short scape. The characters of the male padipalp were not thoroughly considered, making the *A. ejusmodi* group somewhat arbitrary. Further taxonomic and systematic work must be conducted to clarify the aforementioned issues.

**Acknowledgements**

This manuscript benefitted greatly from comments by subject editor Sarah Crews and two reviewers, Volker W. Framenau and Anna Šestáková. We are grateful to Jiahui Gan, Tianjun Liu, Feng’e Li, Tingrong Peng, Xian Li, Guijie Tian, Yuanfa Yang, Hong Liu, Siyi Yan, Ke Wen, Zongguang Huang, Yun Liang, Rongrong Liao, and Yingli...
Four new Araneus species from China

Wen for collecting the specimens. This research was supported by the Science and Technology Project Foundation of Guizhou Province ([2020]1Z014), the National Natural Science Foundation of China (NSFC-31660609, 32200369), and the Key Laboratory Project of Guizhou Province ([2020]2003), and it was partly supported by the program of investigation of biodiversity resources in Hunan Province and the Open Project of Ministry of Education Key Laboratory for Ecology of Tropical Islands, Hainan Normal University, China.

References


A revision of the genus *Trichohoplorana* Breuning, 1961 (Arthropoda, Insecta, Coleoptera, Cerambycidae, Lamiinae, Acanthocinini)

Gui-Qiang Huang¹, Dong-Shuo Liu², Rong-Chuan Xiong¹

¹ School of Biological Science and Technology, Liupanshui Normal University, Liupanshui 553004, Guizhou, China ² Unaffiliated, 401, Unit 1, Building 11, Xiying Qianjie, Tongzhou District, 101149, Beijing, China

Corresponding author: Rong-Chuan Xiong (691477843@qq.com)

Abstract

Keywords
Hind wings, male terminalia, new faunistic records, new species, synonyms

Introduction
The genus *Trichohoplorana* was established by Breuning (1961) for *Trichohoplorana dureli* Breuning, 1961. It presently consists of six species from Asia (Tavakilian and Chevillotte 2022). Mitono (1943) described *Acanthocinus shirakii* from China (Taiwan), then Gressitt (1951) transferred *A. shirakii* Mitono, 1943 to *Neacanista* Gressitt, 1940, and finally, Gouverneur (2016) transferred *N. shirakii* to *Trichohoplorana* and...

In this work, new synonyms, new faunistic records, and a new species are provided. Wings and male terminalia are described for the first time. Consequently, *Trichohopl- orana* now consists of seven species from Asia. A redescription and a key to all species of *Trichohoplorana* are presented.

**Material and methods**

Specimens examined are deposited in following institutions and private collections:

- **CDSL** Collection Dong-Shuo Liu, Beijing, China
- **CHS** Collection Carolus Holzschuh, Villach, Austria
- **CWW** Collection Andreas Weigel, Wernburg, Germany
- **CXG** Collection Xavier Gouverneur, Rennes, France
- **LPSNU** School of Biological Science and Technology, Liupanshui Normal University, Liupanshui, Guizhou, China
- **MNHN** Muséum national d’Histoire naturelle, Paris, France
- **SYSU** The Museum of Biology, Sun Yat-sen University, Guangzhou, China

The methods of taking photographs for Figs 2C–G, 4B–F, 6A–E followed Huang et al. (2020), and methods of photographing Fig. 3A–J mainly followed Huang and Li (2019) but were taken with a E3ISPM21000KPA camera and ImageView software. The terminology of hind wings vein follows Švácha and Lawrence (2014). The terminology of male terminalia follows Ślipiński and Escalona (2013).

**Taxonomy**

*Trichohoplorana* Breuning, 1961


**Redescription.** Head distinctly narrower than prothorax, frons with a narrow, median furrow extending from base of clypeus up to apical margin of pronotum; eyes coarsely faceted, lower lobes of eyes distinctly far away from each other and longer than genae;
A revision of the genus *Trichohoplorana* Breuning, 1961

**antennae slender, distinctly longer than body, scape strongly expanded before apex, pedicel distinctly longer than broad. Pronotum transverse, with a tubercle on each side, punctured, with a pair of subuliform tubercles at sides of middle; prosternal process broad, with a longitudinal depression in middle, procoxal cavities closed posteriorly. Scutellum linguiform. Elytra covered with black or brown spots and a series of black or brown spots along suture; disc elongate, distinctly broader than pronotum at base, gradually narrow from near apical third, punctured, with a pair of tubercles at base and near scutellum, with a pair of bumps behind the tubercles; humeral angles rounded and slightly processed forward. Mesocoxal cavities closed externally to mesepimera. Femora strongly clavate.**

**Diagnosis.** *Trichohoplorana* is very similar to *Neacanista* Gressitt, 1940 in having the pronotum with a tubercle at each side, with a pair of tubercles at the sides of the middle, the elytra with a pair of tubercles at the base and near the scutellum, with a pair of bumps behind the tubercles, and a strongly clavate femora. However, *Trichohoplorana* differs from *Neacanista* in having the antennal scape strongly expanded before the apex (gradually thickened before the apex in *Neacanista*) and the pedicle distinctly longer than broad (broader than long in *Neacanista*).

**Distribution.** Bhutan, China, India, Laos, Nepal, Vietnam (new country record).

**Remarks.** Breuning (1982) established *Mimipochira* for *M. sikkimensis* Breuning, 1982, but this genus was a junior homonym of *Mimipochira* Breuning, 1956. Hence, Sama and Sudre (2009) introduced the new name *Ipochiromima*. After comparing photographs of the holotypes of *T. dureli* Breuning, 1961 (Fig. 1A) and *M. sikkimensis* (Fig. 1B, C), we consider these two species as belonging to the same genus, based on above redescribed characters. Thus, we treat *Ipochiromima* as a junior synonym of *Trichohoplorana*.

**Trichohoplorana dureli** Breuning, 1961

Fig. 1A–D


*Ostedes dureli*: Breuning and Heyrovský 1961: 143.


**Type material examined.** *Trichohoplorana dureli* Breuning, 1961: holotype, ♂ (MNHN), Pedong, Sikkim, India, 1914, L. Durel leg., [examined from a photograph (Fig. 1A)]; *Mimipochira sikkimensis* Breuning, 1982: holotype, ♂ (MNHN), Sikkim, India [examined from three photographs (Fig. 1B–D)].

**Distribution.** Bhutan, India (Sikkim).

**Remarks.** The differences between *T. dureli* and *I. sikkimensis* (Fig. 1A–C) mainly reflect in the shape of the elytral brown spots: the large spots near elytral middle, at
Figure 1. Types of *Trichohoplorana* spp. **A** *Trichohoplorana dureli,* holotype, male habitus, dorsal view (photo by Andreas Weigel) **B–D** *Mimipochira sikkimensis* **B** holotype, male habitus, dorsal view **C** holotype, male habitus, lateral view **D** labels (photos by Xavier Gouverneur) **E** *Trichohoplorana juglandis,* holotype, male habitus, dorsal view (photo reproduced from Holzschuh 1989) **F** *Trichohoplorana mutica,* holotype, male habitus, dorsal view (photo reproduced from Holzschuh 1990) **G, H** *Trichohoplorana tenuipes* **G** holotype, male habitus, dorsal view **H** paratype, female habitus, dorsal view (photos provided by Holzschuh) **I, J** *Acanthocinus shirakii:* **I** holotype, male habitus, dorsal view **J** labels (photos reproduced from Huang et al. 2015).
Apical third, and at apex. They are actually intraspecific differences; thus, we treat *I. sikkimensis* as a junior synonym of *T. dureli*.

*Trichohoplorana juglandis* Holzschuh, 1989

Fig. 1E

*Trichohoplorana juglandis* Holzschuh, 1989: 401 (type locality: “Menchunang, East Dochu-La, Thimphu district, West Bhutan”), fig. 8 (holotype, male); Löbl and Smetana 2010: 213 (catalogue); Weigel 2012: 408 (catalogue), pl. XXVII, fig. b; Lazarev 2019: 154 (catalogue).

**Distribution.** Bhutan (Thimphu), India (Arunachal Pradesh).

*Trichohoplorana mutica* Holzschuh, 1990

Fig. 1F

*Trichohoplorana mutica* Holzschuh, 1990: 193 (type locality: “Footpath from Sherpagaon to Ghora Tabela, Langtang Khola, Nawakot, C-Nepal”), fig. 11 (holotype, male); Weigel 2006: 506 (catalogue); Löbl and Smetana 2010: 213 (catalogue).

**Distribution.** Nepal (Nawakot).

*Trichohoplorana tenuipes* Holzschuh, 2015

Fig. 1G, H

*Trichohoplorana tenuipes* Holzschuh, 2015: 473 (type locality: “Bhalukhop, district of Taplejung, East Nepal”), figs 3 (holotype, male) and 4 (paratype, female).

**Type material examined.** Holotype, ♀ (CHS), Bhalukhop, district of Taplejung, East Nepal, alt. 3000m, 11–21.V.2013, Emil Kučera leg., [examined from a photograph (Fig. 1G)]; paratype, 1 ♀ (CHS), data same as holotype, [examined from a photograph (Fig. 1H)].

**Distribution.** Nepal (Taplejung).

*Trichohoplorana shirakii* (Mitono, 1943)

Fig. II, J

*Acanthocinus shirakii* Mitono, 1943: 584 (type locality: “Reimei, Hassenzan, Taiwan”).

*Neacanista shirakii*: Gressitt 1951: 518 (catalogue); Breuning 1978: 40 (redescription); Hua 1982: 99 (catalogue); Nakamura, Makihara and Saito 1992: 95 (catalogue);
Hua 2002: 218 (catalogue); Chou 2004: 326, fig (male); Hua et al. 2009: 95, pl. XCV, fig. 1091 (male and female); Löbl and Smetana 2010: 210 (catalogue); Huang et al. 2015: 560 (catalogue), figs 32 (holotype, male), 33 (holotype, labels), and 34 (4 in map).

*Trichohoplorana shirakii*: Gouverneur 2016: 72, figs 2a (holotype, male) and 2b (holotype, labels).

**Distribution.** China (Taiwan).

*Trichohoplorana luteomaculata* Gouverneur, 2016

**Figs 2–5**

*Trichohoplorana luteomaculata* Gouverneur, 2016: 69 (type locality: “Ban Saleui, Massif du Mont Phou Pan, Houa Phan Province, Northeast Laos”), figs 1a, b (holotype, male) and 1c (paratype, female).

**Type material examined.** *Holotype*, ♂ (CXG), Ban Saleui, Massif du Mont Phou Pan, Houa Phan Province, Northeast Laos, alt. 1300–1900m, 1.V.2012, local collector leg., [examined from two photographs (Fig. 2A, B)]; *paratype*, 1 ♀ (CXG), data same as holotype, but 2.V.2014 [examined from a photograph (Fig. 4A)].

**Additional material examined.** CHINA: 1 ♀ (SYSU), Suoli village, Tongdao County, Huaihua City, Hunan Province, V.1981, Li-Jun Zhang leg.; 1♂1 ♀ (CDSL, figs 2C–G, 3, 4B–F), Jianfengling National Natural Reserve, Hainan Province, 7.VI.2021, 18°42’34.75"N, 108°52’34.50"E, alt. 954 m, Dong-Shuo Liu leg., collected by light trap (Fig. 5); VIETNAM: 1 ♀ (LPSNU), Yen Bai Province, August 2020, local collector leg.; 1 ♀ (CWW), Gem. Ta Pin, Kreis Sapa, Lao Cai Province, 22°22.196’N, 103°48.701’E, alt. 2318 m, 26.VI–01.VII.2017, N.H. Binh leg., [examined from a photograph provided by Andreas Weigel].

**Supplementary description.** *Male* (Figs 2C–G, 3). Hind wings (Fig. 2G) with AA3+4 vein bifurcate near apical third; AA4 vein and AA3 vein closed to each other apically and not extending to margin; AA3 vein connected with Cu vein near apical third; CuA2 vein connected with MP3+4 vein near basal third of MP3+4 vein and not extending to margin; MP3+4 vein bifurcate near middle; MP4 vein, MP3 vein and MS vein not extending to margin; a short and vague uncertain vein (?), either a crossvein or base of MP3+4 vein) located between Cu vein and MP1+2 vein.

**Male terminalia.** Tergite VIII (Fig. 3A) sparsely covered with short brown setae apically and at sides of apical third, nearly truncated at apex. Sternite VIII (Fig. 3B) anchor-shaped, sparsely covered with short brown setae at apical sides, apical margin slightly depressed; spiculum relictum distinctly longer than sternite VIII. Stem of spiculum gastrale more than 2.0 times as long as branches and curved towards dorsum at base (Fig. 3C). Parameres of tegmen sparsely covered with short brown setae on apical third and several long setae near apical fifth; each paramere gradually constricted from base to apex, but
A revision of the genus *Trichohoplorana* Breuning, 1961

**Figure 2.** *Trichohoplorana luteomaculata*, males A, B holotype habitus A dorsal view B lateral view (photos by Xavier Gouverneur) C–G material from Hainan, China C habitus, dorsal view D habitus, lateral view E habitus, ventral view F head, frontal view G right hind wing, dorsal view. Abbreviations: A: anal, Cu: cubital, MP: medial posterior, MS: medial spur, ?: a vein of uncertain homology (either a crossvein or base of MP$_{3+4}$ vein). Scale bars: 5 mm (a); 1 mm (b).

external margin slightly expanded near apex; apex of both parameres rounded and closed together; phallobase nearly 3.0 times as long as parameres and processed outward near middle; anterior tegminal strut curved outward (Fig. 3D–F). Penis curved towards venter, ventral plate distinctly longer and broader than dorsal plate and slightly sharp at apex; dorsal plate widely rounded at apex; apex of dorsal struts obliquely truncated (Fig. 3G–J).

**Female** (Fig. 4B–F). Hind wings (Fig. 4F) with AA$_{3+4}$ vein bifurcate near apical third; AA$_4$ vein and AA$_3$ vein fused apically and not extending to margin; AA$_3$ vein connected with Cu vein near apical third; CuA$_1$ vein connected with MP$_{3+4}$ vein near basal fifth of MP$_{3+4}$ vein and not extending to margin; MP$_{3+4}$ vein bifurcate near middle, MP$_4$ vein, MP$_3$ vein and MS vein not extending to margin; a short uncertain vein (?, either a crossvein or base of MP$_{3+4}$ vein) located between Cu vein and MP$_{1+2}$ vein.

**Distribution.** China (Hainan, Hunan), Laos (Houa Phan), Vietnam (Lao Cai, Yen Bai).
Figure 3. Male terminalia of *Trichohoplora luteomaculata* from Hainan, China A tergite VIII, dorsal view B sternite VIII, ventral view C spiculum gastrale, dorsal view D–F tegmen D dorsal view E ventral view F lateral view G–J penis G dorsal view H dorsal view I ventral view J lateral view. Not to scale.
A revision of the genus *Trichohoplorana* Breuning, 1961

**Figure 4.** *Trichohoplorana luteomaculata*, females A paratype habitus, dorsal view (photo by Xavier Gouverneur) B–F material from Hainan, China B habitus, dorsal view C habitus, lateral view D habitus, ventral view E head, frontal view F right hind wing, dorsal view. Abbreviations: A: anal, Cu: cubital, MP: medial posterior, MS: medial spur, ?: a vein of uncertain homology (either a crossvein or base of MP vein). Scale bars: 5 mm (a), 1 mm (b).

**Figure 5.** Scene showing collecting *Trichohoplorana luteomaculata* by light trap from Hainan, China (photos by Dong-Shuo Liu).
**Trichohoplora nigeralba** sp. nov.
https://zoobank.org/68605399-2CE3-485B-96B7-2530C1A471B8
Fig. 6

**Type material examined. Holotype,** ♀ (LPSNU), Yen Bai Province, Vietnam, V.2019, local collector leg.

**Description. Female, holotype.** Body length: 14.0 mm, humeral width: 5.2 mm. Body black, antennal scape (except for outside of apex), pedicel, antennomeres III (except for apex), IV (except for apex), V (basal half), VI (basal half), elytra (apical half), protibiae (basal half), mesofemora (basal half), mesotibiae (basal half), metafemora (most of parts) and metatibiae (basal half) reddish brown; claws yellowish brown (Fig. 6A–C).

Frons (Fig. 6D) densely covered with short yellow and white hairs. Vertex densely covered with short white hairs on middle and short yellow hairs on center (Fig. 6A). Antennae sparsely covered with sub-erect, short, white setae; scape sparsely covered with short, brown setae; pedicel sparsely covered with short, brown setae, with several short, white setae at internal side of apex; antennomere III sparsely covered with short, white setae basally, other parts densely with short, brown setae; antennomeres IV–XI densely covered with short white setae on the basal half and densely with short, brown setae on the apical half; antennomeres III–VII fringed with several long, black setae ventrally; antennomeres VIII–X fringed with one or two long, black setae ventrally; antennae 1.5 times as long as body, length (mm) of each antennomere: scape = 2.7, pedicel= 0.8, III = 3.0, IV= 3.0, V = 2.2, VI = 2.0, VII = 1.7, VIII = 1.6, IX = 1.6, X = 1.5, XI = 1.3; antennomeres III and IV fringed inward (Fig. 6A–C). Pronotum (Fig. 6A) covered with three yellow haired bands: two located at sides and starting from near anterior margin to posterior margin, one located in middle and starting from anterior margin to posterior margin; disc with a pair of subtriangular, yellow haired spots located at sides of middle; near anterior of pronotum distinctly expanded outward, pronotum densely punctured (except for apex and base), base of the subuliform tubercles on pronotum expanded forward. Prosternum (sides) and propleuron (venter) sparsely covered with short, yellow hairs (Fig. 6B, C). Scutellum (Fig. 6A) sparsely covered with short black hairs, densely covered with yellow hairs at apex, depressed in middle of apical margin. Elytra (Fig. 6A, B) sparsely covered with short black hairs on the basal half, a short yellow haired band at lateral margins of base, several yellow haired spots arranging into an longitudinal line starting from near posterior humeral angle to basal third, a yellow haired spot located behind the bumps, and several yellow spots along suture from basal fourth to middle; the tubercles at elytral base and near scutellum, and the bumps behind the tubercles densely covered with short, black setae; apical half of each elytron densely covered with short white hairs and four longitudinal yellow haired bands (first band located at lateral margin, second and third bands located in middle and fused at apical half, forth band located near suture); disc 1.9 times as long as wide at base, rounded apically, moderately covered with dense coarse punctures at basal half. Mesosternum, mesepisternum, and mesepimeron sparsely covered with short, yellow hairs; metasternum, metepisternum, and metepimeron densely covered with short,
yellow hairs (Fig. 6C). Femora sparsely covered with short white setae and several suberect, long, white setae at external side; tibiae covered with extremely sparse, suberect, long, white setae, sparsely with short, thin, black setae on the basal third, densely with short, white setae in middle, and densely with short, thick, black setae on the apical third; tarsomere I–III (except for venter) densely covered with short white and sparsely suberect, long, white setae dorsally, tarsomere V (except for venter) sparsely covered
with short, white setae at basal half and short, black setae on the apical half, with more sparse long black setae at apex (Fig. 6A–C). Abdominal ventrites I–V densely covered with short, yellow hairs, the hairs more dense at apices of ventrites I–IV; apex and sides of ventrite V sparsely covered with long, yellow pubescences (Fig. 6C).

Hind wings (Fig. 6E) with $\text{AA}_{3+4}$ vein not bifurcate, $\text{AA}_4$ vein missed, $\text{AA}_3$ vein connected with $\text{Cu}$ vein near apical 1/3 and not extending to margin; $\text{CuA}_2$ vein connected with $\text{MP}_{3+4}$ vein near basal 1/3 of $\text{MP}_{3+4}$ vein and not extending to margin; $\text{MP}_{3+4}$ vein bifurcate near apical 1/3, some parts of base of $\text{MP}_{3+4}$ vein missed, a short and vague uncertain vein ($?_1$, either a crossvein or base of $\text{MP}_{3+4}$ vein) connected with base of $\text{MP}_{3+4}$ vein; $\text{MP}_4$ vein, $\text{MP}_3$ vein and $\text{MS}$ vein not extending to margin; a short uncertain vein ($?_2$) located between $\text{MP}_4$ vein and $\text{MP}_3$ vein, not extending to margin. Abdominal ventrite V raised at apical sides and truncated apically (Fig. 6C).

**Male.** Unknown.

**Etymology.** The specific epithet of this new species is derived from the Latin words “*niger*” and “*albus*” referring to most of parts of elytral basal half sparsely covered with short, black hairs and most of parts of elytral apical half densely with short, white hairs.

**Distribution.** Vietnam (Yen Bai).

**Diagnosis.** This new species can be distinctly distinguished from other species of *Trichohoplorana* by its peculiar elytral pattern (Fig. 6A).

**Remarks.** When the senior author received the holotype of this new species, the right antennomere XI was missing and the elytral apex was broken. Then, the head, left antennomere XI, and prothorax were separated from the body due to his carelessness, and he correspondingly glued to the body the separated portions with white emulsoid. Consequently, some hairs on the antennae, elytra, metaventrite, and legs were worn so that some characters are unclear.

---

**Key to species of *Trichohoplorana***

1. Elytra with a broad transverse white haired band on the middle..... *T. juglandis*
   − Elytra without a broad transverse white haired band on the middle ............. 2
2. Elytra not covered with short white or grayish-white hairs ........................ 3
   − Elytra covered with short white or grayish-white hairs................................ 4
3. Tips of the lateral tubercles of the prothorax obtuse, elytral apex slightly obliquely truncated, with the marginal angle obtuse and not distinctly processed, elytral punctuations fine ......................................................... *T. luteomaculata*
   − Tips of the lateral tubercles of the prothorax pointed, elytral apex distinctly obliquely truncated, with the marginal angle pointed and distinctly stretched, elytral punctuations coarse ............................................................... *T. shirakii*
4. Most of parts of elytra densely covered with grayish-white hairs............. *T. dureli*
   − Most of parts of elytra not densely covered with grayish-white hairs............. 5
5. Elytra with a yellow haired spot located behind bumps, most of parts of elytral apical half densely covered with short white hairs................................. *T. nigeralba*
   − Elytra without a yellow haired spot located behind bumps, most of parts of elytral apical half not densely covered with short, white hairs ....................... 6
6 Lateral tubercles of prothorax thick, elytra with a transverse band behind bumps, marginal angles distinctly processed .................................................. $T$. mutica

– Lateral tubercles of prothorax thin, elytra with a transverse band on the middle, rounded apically ................................................................. $T$. tenuipes

Acknowledgements

We sincerely appreciate Mr Xavier Gouverneur (CXG) for providing photographs of the holotype of $Trichohoplorana$ luteomaculata and Mimipochira sikkimensis, Dr Andreas Weigel (CWW) for providing a photograph of the holotype of $Trichohoplorana$ dureli, Dr Carolus Holzschuh (CHS) for providing photographs of the type of $Trichohoplorana$ tenuipes. We are very grateful to Andreas Weigel for providing material of $T$. luteomaculata and literature, to Dr Ping Wang (Yangtze University, Jingzhou, Hubei, China) for providing literature, and to Prof Hong Pang (SYSU), Dr Bing-Lan Zhang (SYSU), and Mr Wei-Cai Xie (SYSU) for providing kind help during the senior author's visits to SYSU. We express our special appreciation to Mr Ming-Zhi Zhao (South China Agricultural University, Guangzhou, Guangdong, China) for obtaining materials of $T$. luteomaculata and $T$. nigeralba. We also thank the reviewers Dr Eduard Vives (Natural Science Museum of Barcelona, Spain), Mr Xavier Gouverneur (Rennes, France), and Dr Francesco Vitali (Academic Editor for Cerambycidae) for improving our manuscript.

This research was supported by Guizhou Provincial Science and Technology Foundation (黔科合基础-ZK[2022]一般527), the Fund Project of the Education Department of Guizhou Province (黔教技[2022]091号, 黔教技[2022]054号, 黔教技[2022]338号), the Science and Technology Innovation Team Project of Liupanshui Normal University (LPSSYKJTD201602).

References


Mitono T (1943) Descriptions of some new species and varieties of longicorn-beetles from Taiwan. Transactions of the Natural History Society of Formosa 33: 578–588.


A revision of the genus *Trichohoplora* Breuning, 1961


